EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 5

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers



For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies in Victoria Mutundwe Primary School and Makindye Junior school with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorised act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

***Author*:** **Kimbugwe Apollo**

Typing: **Kasozi Deo**

Ssevvume Willy

Kamya Imelda

Technical adviser: **Mary Flavia Namulindwa**

Cover design: **Excel Graphics**

Editing: **Excel Publishers Editorial Board**

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Five has been developed basing on the revised Primary Five Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organised, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Five in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the pupils.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts.

TEL: +256 771 623617  and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN UGANDA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TERM ONE

Topic 1: Location of Uganda on the map of East Africa.

Districts and Regions that form Uganda..... ...6
Maps and pictures..... 8
Locating Uganda using the grid reference system..... 12
Uganda's neighbours 16
Uganda as a land locked country..... 17

Topic 2: Physical Features of Uganda.

Introduction to Physical Features 20
Mountains in Uganda..... 20
The Rift Valley..... 26
Plateaus 27
Lakes in Uganda..... 27
Rivers in Uganda 32
The Influence of Physical Features 36

Topic 3: Climate of Uganda.

Weather 40
Climatic Zones of Uganda 42
Factors that Influence the Climate of Uganda 46
The Influence of Climate on Human Activities..... ...49
Farming in Uganda..... 50

Topic 4: Vegetation of Uganda.

Introduction to Vegetation 61
Vegetation Zones of Uganda ..... .62
Vegetation Distribution in Uganda 69
The Influence of Vegetation on Animals ..... .70
Game Parks in Uganda 71
Tourism industry in Uganda 74
Vegetation Conservation 75
Relationship between vegetation and population distribution..... 76

Topic 5: Natural resources of Uganda.

Introduction to natural resources..... 79
Land as a resource..... 79
Water resources 80
Minerals as a resource 82
Animal resources 84
Climate (wind, rainfall, sunshine) as a resource 85
Human resource 86

TERM TWO

Topic 6: The People of Pre-colonial Uganda.

Origin of the People of Uganda 89
Major Ethnic Groups in Uganda..... ..92
Migration of people today 99

Settlement patterns of the people of Uganda.....104
Political, Social and Economic Organisation among The People of Uganda.....105

Topic 7. Foreign Influence in Uganda.

Early Foreign Traders in Uganda 118
European Explorers in Uganda 123
Christian missionaries in Uganda 127
Colonial administrators in Uganda 135

Topic 8. How Uganda became a Nation.

Colonial agreements that were signed in Uganda.....143
Evolution of Uganda's boundaries 145
Colonial administrative systems used in Uganda 146

Topic 9. The Road to independence in Uganda.

Characteristics of colonial rule 149
Colonial resisters in Uganda 150
Formation of the LEGCO in Uganda 151
The struggle for independence in Uganda 152
Formation of political parties in Uganda 153
The influence of world wars on Uganda's independence 154
Uganda gains her independence 156

TERM THREE

Topic 10. Uganda as an independent nation.

Presidents of Uganda since independence.....159
Symbols of an independent nation 162
Democracy in Uganda 166
Elections 167

Topic 11: The Government of Uganda.

Levels of government in Uganda 174
Organs of the government 174
The National constitution 180
Sources of government revenue 182
Budgeting 184
Rights and responsibilities of citizens 187

Topic 12. Population size and Distribution

Introduction to population 194
Population growth 194
Population census 195
Population distribution 196
Population density 199
Effects of HIV/ AIDS on population 201

TOPIC 1: LOCATION OF UGANDA ON THE MAP OF EAST AFRICA.

DISTRICTS THAT FORM UGANDA.

- A district is an administrative area at the level of Local Council Five (LC V)
- Uganda is divided into districts mainly to ease administration.
- Chairperson LC V is the political head of a district.
- Districts in Uganda are grouped into regions, and each region is divided into sub-regions according to the customs of the people in that area.

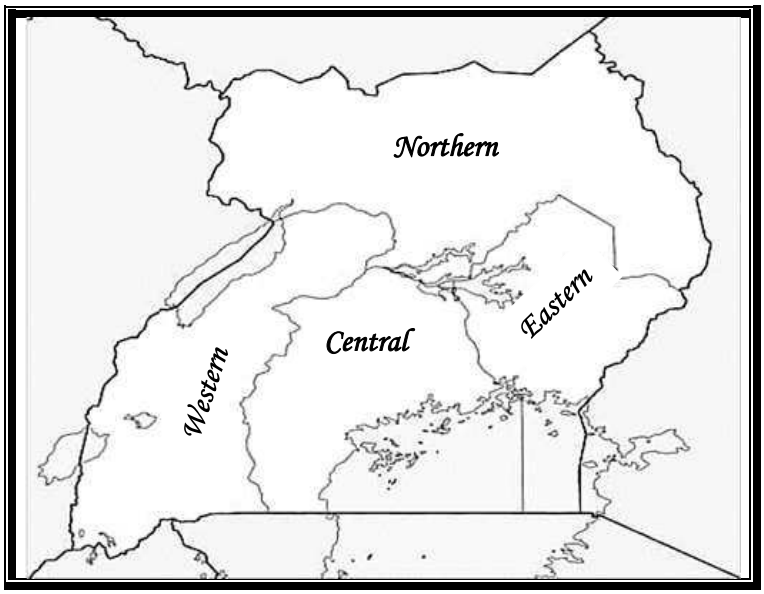
Regions that form Uganda.

- Central region.
- Northern region
- Western region
- Eastern region

Sub-regions found in each region of Uganda.

Region of Uganda	*Sub-region*	*Districts*
Central region	Buganda sub-region	-Kampala -Mpigi -Masaka -Mityana -Luwero -Kalangala -Nakasongola -Mubende -Rakai -Wakiso -Sembabule etc.
Northern region	Acholi sub-region	-Gulu -Kitgum -Agago -Pader
	Karamoja sub-region	-Kotido -Abim -Moroto -Kaabong -Nakapiripirit etc
	Lango sub-region	-Lira -Apac -Oyam -Dokolo etc
	West Nile sub-region	-Arua -Nebbi -Zombo -Yumbe -Adjumani -Koboko
Western region	Bunyoro sub-region	-Hoima -Buliisa -Kibaale -Masindi
	Tooro sub-region	-Kabarole -Kamwenge -Kyegegwa
	Rwenzori sub-region	-Kasese -Bundibugyo -Ntoroko
	Kigezi sub-region	-Kabale -Kisoro -Kanungu -Rukungiri
	Ankole sub-region	-Mbarara -Ibanda -Kiruhura
Eastern region	Busoga sub-region	-Jinja -Iganga -Mayuge -Luuka -Buyende
	Teso sub-region	-Soroti -Serere -Kumi -Amuria etc
	Bugishu sub-region	-Mbale -Sironko -Bududa -Bulambuli
	Sebei sub-region	-Kapchorwa -Bukwo -Kween
	Bukedi sub-region	-Pallisa -Kibuku -Budaka -Tororo -Busia

REGIONS THAT MAKE UP UGANDA.



Reasons why Uganda is divided into districts.

- To ease administration.
- To extend social services nearer to people.
- To create more job opportunities to people.

Disadvantages of creating more new districts.

- It leads to separation of communities/ tribes.
- It leads to high administrative costs.
- It makes equal distribution of resources difficult.

HIGHLAND DISTRICTS

- These are districts which are located in areas of high altitude.
- Such districts usually have many hills and mountains.
- Altitude is the height above the sea level.

Examples of highland districts.

- Mbale
- Kapchorwa
- Kabale
- Kisoro
- Bundibugyo
- Kasese
- Moroto
- Rukungiri

Economic activities that are commonly carried out in highland districts.

- Tourism
- Crop growing
- Mining

Problems faced by people living in highland districts.

- Landslides
- Severe soil erosion
- Poor transport network
- Difficulty in agricultural mechanisation.

Possible solutions to the problems facing people living in highland districts.

- By rearing donkeys to use them as means of transport.
- By constructing winding roads.
- By practising afforestation and reafforestation to control landslides.
- By terracing, contour ploughing and strip cropping to reduce soil erosion.

Note:

- ✓ *Heavy rainfall is the major cause of landslides in highland areas.*
- ✓ *Landslides can be controlled in highland areas by planting more trees.*

- ✓ *Ground transport is very poor in highland areas because it is very difficult and expensive to construct roads in highland areas.*
- ✓ *Agricultural mechanisation is so poor in highland areas because the steep slopes make the use of tractors difficult.*
- ✓ *Road transport can be improved in highland areas by constructing winding roads.*
- ✓ *People living in Kapchorwa district rear donkeys mainly to use them as means of transport.*

ISLAND DISTRICTS.

- **An island is an area of land which is completely surrounded by a water body.**
- **The island districts in Uganda are found in Lake Victoria.**

Examples of Islands districts.

- ❖ **Kalangala**
- ❖ **Buvuma**

Economic activities that are commonly carried out in Island districts.

- ❖ **Fishing.**
- ❖ **Crop cultivation (oil palm growing, maize, banana, potatoes)**
- ❖ **Lumbering**
- ❖ **Trading.**
- ❖ **Tourism due to presence of Ssese forest, Ngamba island which is famous for Chimpanzees**

Benefits enyoyed by Island districts.

- ❖ **They get easy access to water.**
- ❖ **They have fertile soils.**
- ❖ **They receive plenty of rainfall.**

Problems facing people living in Island districts.

- ❖ **Poor road transport.**
- ❖ **Attacks from aquatic animals eg.crocodiles.**
- ❖ **Lack of hydro electricity**
- ❖ **Floods**
- ❖ **Poor social service delivery.**
  - ➢ **Note**: *-There is no hydro electricity in Kalangala and because it is very expensive to fix electric poles in water of lake Victoria to these districts.*

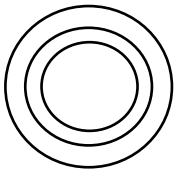
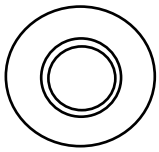
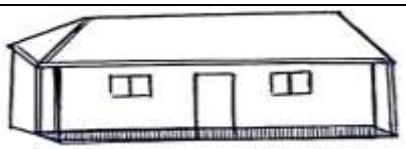
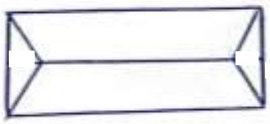
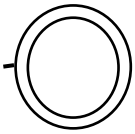
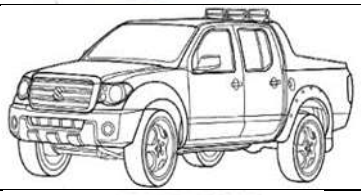
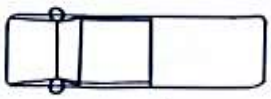
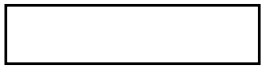
Possible solutions to the problems facing Island districts of Uganda.

- ❖ **By using other sources of energy eg. solar energy**
- ❖ **By employing more social service providers.**
- ❖ **By providing better means of water transport.**
- ❖ **By building better social service centres in island districts.**
- ❖ **By paying attractive salaries to people who provide social services in island districts.**

MAPS AND PICTURES.

- **A map is a drawing/ representation of an object as seen from above.**
- **Maps show how objects look like when viewed directly from above.**
- **We use symbols to help us understand and interpret a map of a detailed area.**
- **The boundary of a map determines the size and shape of the map.**
- **A picture is a representation of an object as seen from above.**
- **All features on a picture can be clearly seen as real objects.**
- **Pictures are more detailed than maps.**

Maps and Pictures of different objects

Object name	*Picture*	*Map*
a tree		
a plate		
a pot		
a house		
a chair		
a cup		
a hut		
a car		
a table		

Similarity between maps and pictures.

- **Both are representations of objects.**

Types of maps.

(i) Political maps. These maps show boundaries of villages, counties, districts and countries.

(ii) Topographic maps. These maps show physical features/ landforms of a given area.eg.mountains etc.

(iii) Flow-line maps. These show movement of people, goods, animals etc.

(iv) Thematic maps. These show various social and economic themes eg. trade, energy.

Importance of maps.

- They are used for locating places.
- They help travelers to plan for routes to take while on their journeys.
- They help people to know the relief, climate and vegetation of different areas.

ELEMENTS OF A MAP.

- A compass direction
- A scale
- A title/heading
- A frame
- A key

Importance of different elements of a good map.

Element	*Importance*
❖ A compass direction	❖ It helps to show the direction of places on a map. -A map reader may fail to know the direction of places shown on the map if he/she reads a map without a compass direction.
❖ A title/ heading	❖ It helps one to know what the map is all about. -One who reads a map without a title may fail to know what the map is all about.
❖ A key	❖ It helps a map reader to interpret symbols used on a map. -A key gives detailed information about the map. -A map reader may fail to interpret/ know the meaning of symbols used on a map if he/she reads a map without a key.
❖ A scale	❖ It helps a map reader to calculate the actual ground distance on a map. -A map reader may fail to calculate the actual ground distance between places on the map if he/she reads a map without a scale.
❖ A frame	❖ It shows the extent of the area represented by the map.

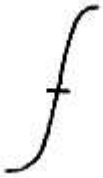
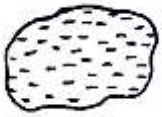
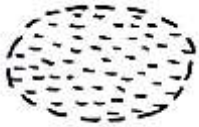
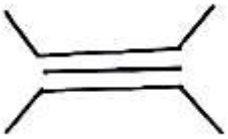
MAP SYMBOLS.

- These are features that are used to represent real objects on a map.

Why symbols are used on maps.

- To avoid congestion on the map.
- To make map reading easy.
- To ensure neatness of a map.

Common symbols used on maps.

				
A rift valley	*waterfall*	*A dam*	*A canal*	*A swamp*
				
A quarry	*A hill*	*airport*	*contours*	*a factory*
				
Railway line	*A port*	*hospital*	*mountain peak*	*permanent lake*
				
Seasonal lake	*church*	*A bridge*	*Seasonal river*	*Compass direction*

A COMPASS DIRECTION

- **A compass** is an instrument used to find direction of places.
- A drawn compass is called *a compass rose.*

People who use a compass.

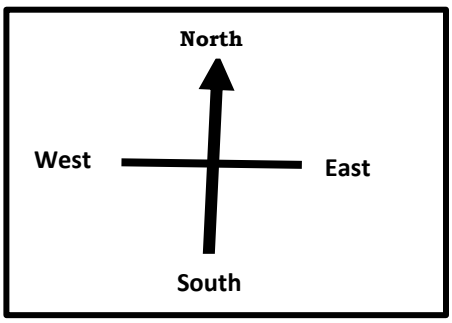
- Rally drivers
- Tourists
- Pilots
- Mountain climbers
- Sailors
- Scouts and girl guides.
- Soldiers.

A compass direction.

- **A compass direction** is a symbol used on a map to show the direction of places.
- The compass points are divided into the cardinal points,semi-cardinal points (secondary points) and tertiary points.
- **Cardinal points** are the four major points of a compass.

These include;

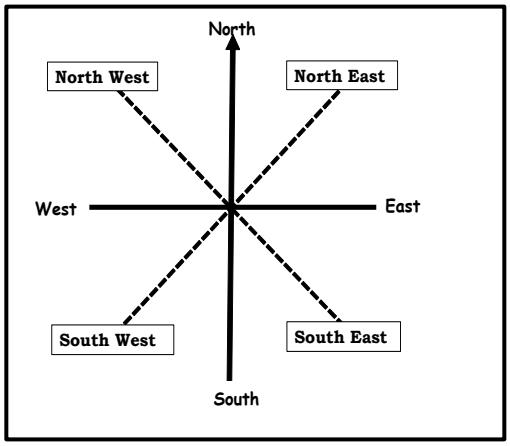
- North
- South
- West
- East



- **Secondary points** are the directions that lie midway of cardinal poits.
- Semi-cardinal points lie at 45° from the cardinal points.

These include;

- South East
- South West
- North East
- North West



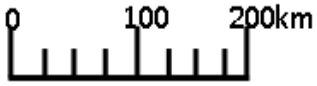
A SCALE.

- **A scale** helps a map reader to calculate the actual ground distance on a map.
- A map reader who reads a map without a scale may fail to calculate the actual ground distance on a map.
- A scale is only found on accurate maps.
- **A sketch map** is a map which is not drawn to scale while **an accurate map** is a map which is drawn to scale.

Types of scales.

(i) Linear scale.

This is the type of scale drawn using lines that are divided into equal parts.



Example;

*Find the actual ground distance between town **Q** and town **S** if there is a distance of 6cm between the two towns on the map.*

Solution;

1cm = 100km

6cm = (6×100)km

= 600km.

*Therefore,the actual ground distance between Town **Q** and Town **S** is 600km.*

(ii) Representative scale/ fractional scale.

This is the type of scale written as a mathematical fraction.

It can also be written as a ratio.eg. $\frac{1}{100\text{km}}$ or 1:100km.

(iii) Statement scale.

This type of scale can be given as a statement or words.

Eg.1cm on a map represents 100km on the ground.

LOCATING UGANDA USING THE GRID REFERENCE SYSTEM

Ways of locating places.

- By using a compass.
- By using neighbouring places.
- By using landmarks.

Ways of locating places on a map

- Using a compass direction.
- Using neighbouring places.
- Using physical features.
- Using lines of latitude and lines of longitude (grid reference system)

GRID REFERENCE SYSTEM

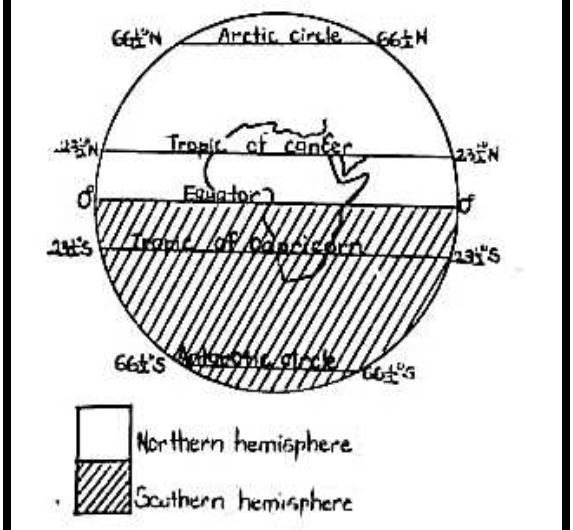
- **This is the method of locating places using lines of latitude and lines of longitude.**
- **Grid refers to the network of horizontal and vertical lines used as references co-ordinates to locate places on a map.**

(i) LINES OF LATITUDE.

- **These are imaginary lines drawn on maps or globe from East to West.**
- **The general name for all lines of latitude is parallels because they do not meet at any point.**
- **Latitude is the distance in degrees North or South of the equator.**
- **Lines of latitude help in determining climate of places.**
- **Lines of latitude help us to tell how far a place is North or South of the Equator.**

Major lines of latitude.

- **The Equator (0^0)**
- **Tropic of Cancer ($23\frac{1}{2}^0$N)**
- **Tropic of Capricorn ($23\frac{1}{2}^0$S)**
- **Arctic circle ($66\frac{1}{2}^0$N)**
- **Antarctic circle ($66\frac{1}{2}^0$S)**



THE EQUATOR

- *The Equator divides the world into two equal parts (hemispheres)*
- *The Equator is marked **0^0** because it is the starting point for all latitude readings.*
- *The Equator is the most important line of latitude because it crosses the world at the centre.*
- *All districts which are crossed by the equator lie in both the Northern and Southern hemisphere.*
- *Note:*
- ***A globe** is the model of the earth*
- *The Equator crosses **lake George** and **lake Victoria** in Uganda.*
- ***A hemisphere** is a half part of the world as divided by the equator or prime meridian.*
- *The area between the Tropic of cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn is called the **Tropical region**.*

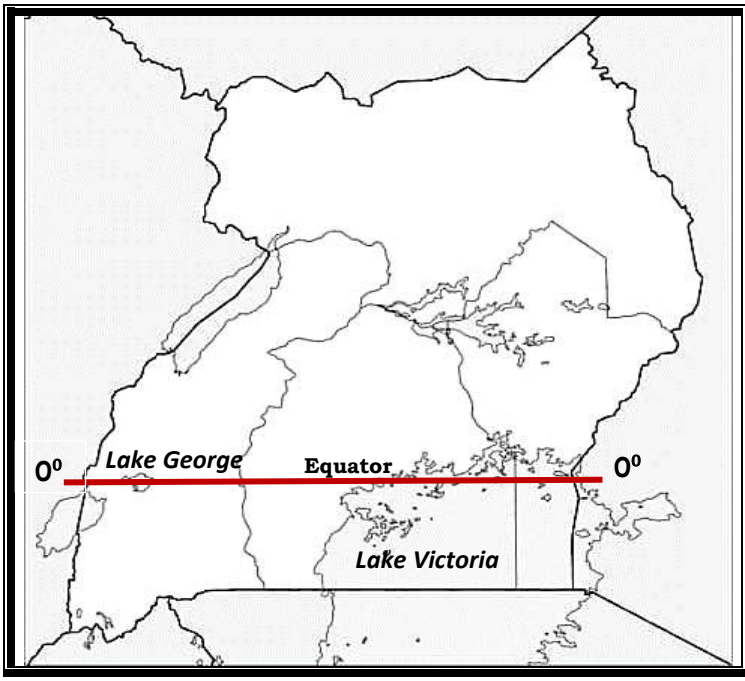
Districts crossed by the Equator in Uganda

- **Ibanda**
- **Kasese**
- **Mpigi**
- **Mukono**
- **Wakiso**
- **Namayingo**
- **Mayuge**
- **Kalungu**
- **Bukomasimbi**
- **Buvuma**
- **Sembabule**
- **Lyantonde**
- **Kamwenge**

Importance of lines of latitude

- **They help to determine the climate of a place.**
- **Lines of latitude and lines of longitude are used to locate places on a map.**

Location of the Equator on the map of Uganda





Location of the Equator at Kayabwe along Kampala-Masaka road

Practical activity;

Use the political map of Uganda and identify all districts that;

(i) Are crossed by the Equator.

(ii) Completely lie in the Northern hemisphere

(iii) Completely lie in the Southern hemisphere.

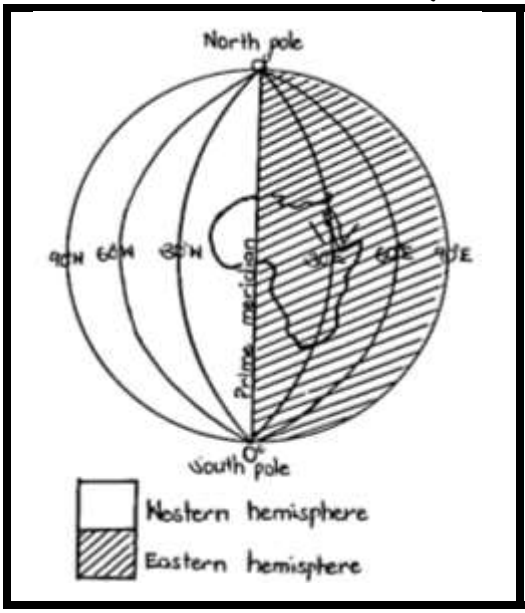
(iv) Lie in both the Northern and the Southern hemisphere

(ii) LINES OF LONGITUDE.

- **Lines of longitude are imaginary lines drawn on maps and globe from the North pole to the South pole**
- **They are also known as meridians.**
- **Lines of longitude meet at the poles of the earth.**

Major lines of longitude.

- **The Prime meridian/ Greenwich meridian (0⁰)**
- **The International dateline. (180⁰E or W)**



The Prime Meridian/ Greenwich Meridian

- *The Prime meridian is also called the **Greenwich meridian** because it crosses Greenwich town in London.*
- *The Prime meridian is marked **0⁰** because it is the starting point for all longitude readings.*
- *The Prime meridian divides the world into the Eastern and Western hemisphere.*
- *All countries crossed by the Prime meridian lie in both the Eastern and Western hemisphere.*

Note;

- ***The Prime meridian** helps in telling international time.*
- ***The International dateline** separates one day from the next day.*
  e.g. East of the International dateline may be Wednesday while West of it is Tuesday.

Using the Prime meridian to tell the international time.

- **A time zone is an area/region with the same standard time.**
- **Different regions of the world have different time zones according to the distance from the Prime meridian.**
- **Places which are in the same time zone have the same standard time.**
  e.g. Uganda, Kenya and Tanzania are in the same time zone, and so have the same standard time. (East Africa standard time)
- **East Africa lies at longitude 45º while Rwanda and Burundi are 30ºE of the Greenwich meridian.**
  - **Note:**
    - ✓ *The rotation of the earth on its axis causes days and nights.*
    - ✓ *The earth makes one complete rotation of 360^0 in one day (24hours). Therefore, it rotates through an angle of 15^0 in every 1hour (60min).*
    - ✓ *Every 15^0 E or W of the Greenwich meridian is a time zone.*
    - ✓ *When you travel 15^0 westwards, you lose an hour while travelling 15^0 eastwards makes you gain an hour.*
    - ✓ *We usually add (+) hours for places which are in the East and subtract (-) the time when finding the time for places which are in the West.*
    - ✓ *Changing of the time to and from 24hr clock (by either adding or subtracting 12 hrs) affects the units in which the time is given.(ie. From am to pm and viceversa).*
    - ✓ *Time in each time zone is calculated basing on the Greenwich mean time (GMT) which is at 0^0 longitude.*

Example 1:

1. Find the time in East Africa which is 45^0 if it is 1:00pm at GMT.

Solution,

15^0=1hr

45^0=($\frac{45}{15}$) hrs.

=3hrs

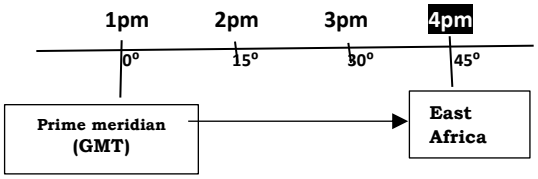
Time in East Africa=1:00pm

+3.00hrs

4:00pm

*Therefore, time in East Africa is **4:00pm.***

OR:



*Therefore, time in East Africa is **4:00pm***

Example 2.

2. What time will it be in country T which is 60^0W if it is 3:00pm in Ghana?

Solution,

15^0=1hr

60^0=($\frac{60}{15}$) hrs

=4hrs

Time in country T is = 3:00pm (+12hours)

-4.00hrs

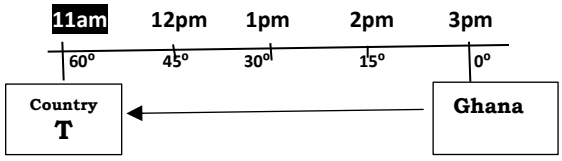
=15.00hrs

-4.00hrs

11:00am

*Therefore, the time in country **T** will be **11:00am**.*

OR:



*Therefore, time in country **T** will be **11:00am***

Locating Uganda using the grid reference system.

- **Uganda is located between latitude 4^0N and 1^0S and longitude 29^0E and 35^0E of the Greenwich meridian.**
- **The farthest point in the North is Zulia while Kisoro is the farthest in the South.**
- **Ishaka is the farthest town in the West while Amudat is the farthest in the East.**

Location of Uganda using the grid reference system.



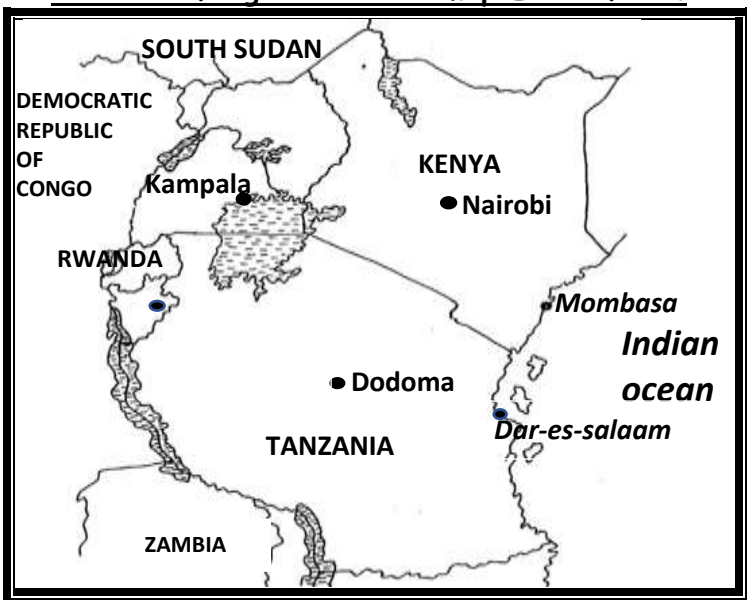
UGANDA'S NEIGHBOURS.

- **Uganda is bordered by five (5) countries.**

These include;

- **Kenya in the East**
- **Tanzania in the South**
- **South sudan in the North**
- **Democratic Republic of Congo in the West**
- **Rwanda in the South West.**

Location of Uganda on the map East Africa.



Countries that neighbour Uganda.

Country	*Direction from Uganda*	*Direction to Uganda*	*Capital City*	*Current President*
Kenya	East	West	Nairobi	H.E Uhuru Kenyatta
Tanzania	South	North	Dodoma	H.E John Pombe Magufuli
DRC	West	East	Kinshasa	H.E Felix Tshisekedi
South Sudan	North	South	Juba	H.E Salva Kiir
Rwanda	South West	North East	Kigali	H.E Paul Kagame

UGANDA AS A LAND LOCKED COUNTRY

- **A land locked country is a country without a coastline.**
- **Uganda is a land locked country because she has no coastline.**
- **Uganda usually uses her neighbours' sea ports when importing and exporting her goods.**

Land locked countries that border Uganda.

- **Rwanda**
- **South sudan**

Seaports that handle Uganda's imports and exports.

- **Port Mombasa in Kenya**
- **Port Dar-es-salaam in Tanzania**
- **Port Matadi in Democratic Republic of Congo**

Note:

- ✓ ***A Seaport*** *is a a place at the coast where ships anchor.*
- ✓ *Uganda mostly imports her goods through port Mombasa because port Mombasa is nearer to Uganda than other sea ports.*

Problems faced by land locked countries in Uganda.

- **High taxation on overseas goods/imports.**
- **Delay of overseas goods in transit.**
- **High transport costs when importing goods.**
- **There is limited trade with the rest of the world.**
- **High prices for imported goods.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Smuggling*** *is the illegal importation and exportation of goods.*
- ✓ *Smuggling reduces market for locally manufactured goods.*
- ✓ *It may also lead to importation of low quality goods into the country.*
- ✓ ***Imports*** *are goods that are brought in a country from other countries eg. Vehicles Uganda imports from Germany.*
- ✓ ***Exports*** *are goods a country sells to other countries. eg.food Uganda sells to South Sudan.*

Steps land locked countries can take/ have taken to solve some of the above challenges.

(How Uganda can solve the problems she faces due to her location)

- **By using air transport when importing goods.**
- **By using various sea ports when importing goods.**
- **By promoting domestic industrial production.**
- **By joining common markets in the region.eg.East African Community (EAC)**
- **By improving security along the high ways.**

NON-LAND LOCKED COUNTRIES.

- **A Non-land locked country is a country which has a coastline.**
- **Non-landlocked countries have their own sean ports that handle their imports and exports.**

Non-landlocked countries that neighbour Uganda.

- **Kenya**
- **Tanzania**
- **Democratic Republic of Congo**

Major sea ports of Uganda's neighbours.

Non landlocked country	*Sea port*
Kenya	Port Mombasa
Tanzania	Port Dar-es-salaam
Democratic Republic of Congo	Port Matadi

Benefits enjoyed by Non-land locked countries.

- **They pay less taxes on their imported goods.**
- **They earn income through taxing goods for land locked countries that pass through them.**
- **They can easily trade with other countries.**

Note:

- ✓ *Hinterlands are areas in a country that are far away from the coast or main cities.*

Reasons why Uganda should cooperate with her neighbours

- **To widen market for her goods.**
- **To use her neighbours' sea ports to handle her exports and imports.**
- **To get goods which she cant produce locally.**





1. **Mention the four geographical regions that make up Uganda.**
2. **Give any two reasons why Uganda is divided into districts.**
3. **State any one problem a country faces as a result of having many districts.**
4. **Mention any two sub-regions found in each of the following regions of Uganda.**
   - **(i) Northern region**
   - **(ii) Western region**
   - **(iii) Eastern region**
5. **Mention any two economic activities that are commonly carried out in highland areas.**
6. **What is the major cause of landslides in highland areas?**
7. **Mention any two problems faced by people living in highland areas.**
8. **How can road transport be made possible in highland areas?**
9. **Mention any three elements of a good map.**
10. **What is an island?**
11. **Name the two island districts in Uganda.**
12. **State any one factor that hinders economic development in island districts.**
13. **How is a map different from a picture?**
14. **Which problem is a map reader likely to face when reading a map without;**
    - **(a) A key**
    - **(b) A title**
15. **Why are symbols always used on maps instead of real objects?**

16. Draw the maps of the following objects.

a hut	a tree	a table	a pot

17. Give any two ways one can locate places on a map.
18. What general name is given to lines of latitude?
19. Name any one water body the equator crosses in Uganda.
20. Why is the equator marked 0^0 ?
21. How is a compass direction useful to a map reader?
22. Draw the map symbols for each of the following features.

A rift valley	A waterfall	A dam	A canal

23. How are lines of latitude and lines of longitude important?
24. Name the line of longitude that helps in telling the international time?
25. Find the time in East Africa which is 45^0 E if it is 3:00pm in Ghana.
26. Name the country which Uganda neighbours to the West.
27. Give the meaning of lines of Longitude.
28. Why are lines of latitude sometimes called Parallels?
29. Mention the three types of scales used on maps.
30. Why are maps drawn by P.5 pupils referred to as sketch maps?
31. Find the actual ground distance between Town Q and Town P which are 5cm apart on the map usiong the scale 1cm=100km.
32. State the standard measure for lines of longitude and lines of latitude.
33. Why is the Prime meridian sometimes called the Greenwich meridian?
34. Mention any three districts which are crossed by the equator in Uganda.
35. Musa was facing North East and he turned through an angle of 135^0 anto-clockwise. Which new direction did he face?
36. What causes days and nights?
37. Why is Uganda referred to as a land locked country?
38. Name the two land locked countries that border Uganda.
39. State any two problems Uganda faces due to her location.
40. How is Uganda different from Kenya in terms of location?
41. State the effect of the rotation of the earth on its axis.
42. Name the sea port that handles most of Uganda's imports and exports.
43. Why does uganda mostly use the above seaport to handle her imports?
44. Give any two ways uganda can solve the problems she faces due to her location.
45. Give any two reasons why Uganda should cooperate with her neighbours.

TOPIC 2: PHYSICAL FEATURES OF UGANDA.

INTRODUCTION TO PHYSICAL FEATURES.

- Physical features are land forms of the earth's surface that give it shape.

Examples of physical features.

- Mountains.
- Hills.
- Lakes.
- Rivers.
- Plateau.
- Plains.
- Rift valleys.
- Seas.
- Oceans.
- Valleys.

Types of physical features.

- Drainage features.
- Relief features.

Relief features.

- Relief features are landforms identified by their altitude.
- Relief is the physical appearance of the land scape.
- Altitude is the height above the sea level.

Examples of relief physical features.

- Mountain.
- Plateau.
- Hills.
- Rift valley.
- Valleys.
- Plains.

Drainage features.

- These are landforms that contain water.

Examples of drainage features.

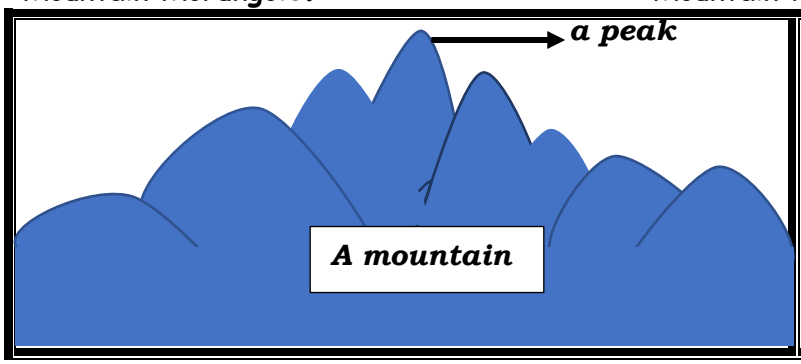
- Lakes.
- Rivers.
- Seas.
- Oceans.

MOUNTAINS IN UGANDA.

- A mountain is a high large piece of land usually higher than a hill.

Examples of mountains in Uganda.

- Mountain Rwenzori.
- Mountain Zulia.
- Mountain Elgon.
- Mountain Morungole.
- Mountain Mufumbiro.
- Mountain Napak.
- Mountain Kadam.
- Mountain Moroto.



A map symbol of ***a mountain peak.***



Types of mountains in Uganda.

- Volcanic mountains.
- Block mountains.

(i) **BLOCK MOUNTAINS**

- These mountains are also called horst mountains.
- Block mountains were formed as a result of faulting.
- Faulting is the cracking/ breaking of rocks in the earth's crust.
- The central block between the two faults is lifted up by compressional forces forming a block mountain.

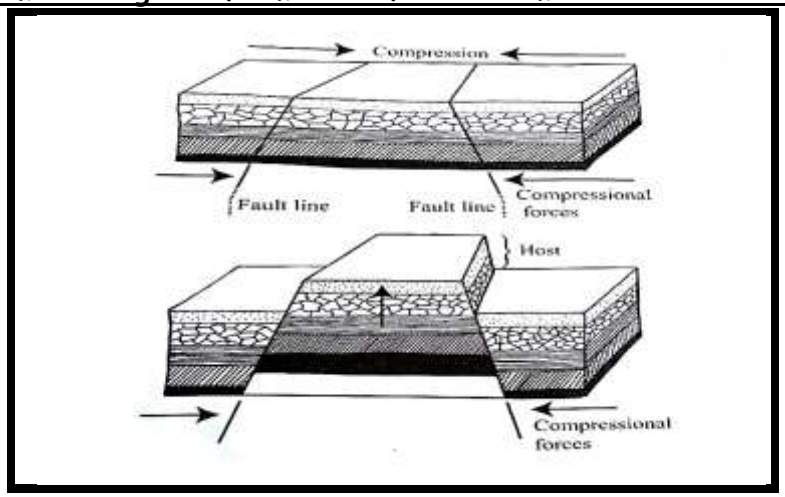
Forces that led to the formation of a block mountain

- Compressional forces
- Tensional forces.

Example of a block mountain in Uganda

- Mountain Rwenzori

A diagram showing the formation of a block mountain due to Compressional forces.



MOUNTAIN RWENZORI.

- It is the highest mountain in Uganda.
- Mountain Rwenzori is located in Western Uganda.
- It is surrounded by districts like Kasese, Kabalore and Bundibugyo.
- It forms a boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.
- It has many peaks ie Margherita as the highest and Stanley as the second highest.
- It is called a range because it has many peaks.
- Margherita is snowcapped throughout the year because it is above the snow line.
- Henry Morton Stanley was the first European explorer to see mountain Rwenzori.
- He named it the "mountains of the moon" because of the snow on its peak which glitters like a moon.
- Mountain Rwenzori is a source of rivers like River Mubuku, river Sebwe, River Nyamwamba, River Mpanga. These rivers flow frm molten snow on mountain rivers.

Tribes that live on the slope of mountain Rwenzori.

- Bakonzo.
- Bamba

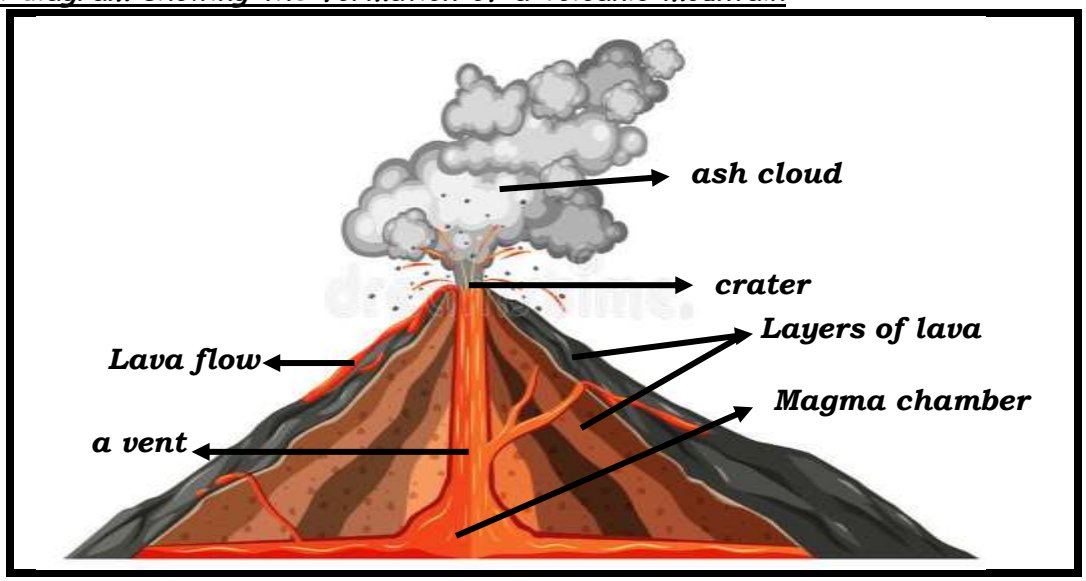
Crops commonly grown on the slopes of mountains.

- Arabica coffee
- Bananas.

VOLCANIC MOUNTAINS.

- These are mountains formed as a result of volcanicity.
- Volcanicity is the process by which magma is forced onto the earth's surface through a vent.
- Volcanicity can also be called *volcanic activity* or *volcanic eruption.*
- A volcano is a mountain with a vent through which magma is forced through the earth crust and onto the earth's surface.
- Magma refers to the molten rock in the earth crust.
- Lava refers to the molten rock on the earth's surface.

A diagram showing the formation of a volcanic mountain



Types of volcanoes

Type of volcano	*Description*	*Example(s)*
Active volcanoes	These are mountains that have erupted in the recent past and still show signs of erupting.	• Mountain Mufumbiro
Dormant volcanoes.	These are mountains that have not erupted in the recent past but still show signs of erupting.	• Mountain Moroto.
Extinct volcanoes	These are mountains that do not show any signs of erupting.	• Mountain Elgon • Mountain Napak • Mountain Morungole • Mountain Zulia • Mountain Kadam

Importance of volcanicity

- ❖ It leads to formation of fertile volcanic soils which are favourable for crop growing. eg.Arabica coffee is mainly grown on the slopes of mountain Elgon due to the presence of fertile soils.
- ❖ Volcanic mountains attract tourists who bring in income.

Dangers of volcanicity.

- **It leads to death of people and animals.**
- **It leads to destruction of property.**
- **It leads to air pollution.**

Other features formed as a result of volcanicity.

- **Crater lakes.**
- **Calderas**
- **Inselbergs**
  - ✓ ***An inselberg*** *is an isolated hill that stands above the general level of the surrounding land eg.Labwor hill in Karamoja, Musaijamukuru hill in Hoima, Osukuru hill in Tororo.*
  - ✓ *These inselbergs attract tourists who bring in income and are also a major source of minerals eg. The Osukuru hills which provide limestone used for making cement.*
- **Lava dammed lakes**
- **Hot springs /geysers eg. Kitagata hotsprings in Bushenyi, Sempaya hotsprings in Bundibugyo**
  - ✓ *Hot springs attract tourists and also help in generation of geothermal energy.*

MOUNTAIN ELGON.

- **It is located in Eastern Uganda.**
- **It is the second highest mountain in Uganda.**
- **It is locally known as mountain Masaba.**
- **Its highest peak is Wagagai.**
- **It forms a boundary between Uganda and Kenya.**
- **The Bagishu and Sabiny live on slopes of mountain Elgon.**
- **Joseph Thomson was the first European explorer to see mountain Elgon.**
- **Mountain Elgon national park is located on mountain Elgon.**

Crops commonly grown on the slopes of mountain Elgon.

- **Arabica coffee**
- **Bananas**
- **Wheat**
- **Maize**

Factors that favour the growth of arabica coffee on the slopes of mountain Elgon

- **Presence of volcanic fertile soils.**
- **Presence of heavy rainfall.**
- **Presence of cool temperature.**
  - ➢ **Note:**
    - ✓ *Kapchorwa district is the leading producer of wheat in Uganda.*
    - ✓ *People living in Kapchorwa rear donkeys mainly to use them as means of transport since their district experiences poor transport network.*

Districts that share part of mountain Elgon

- **Mbale**
- **Sironko**
- **Kapchorwa**
- **Manafwa**

Rivers that originate from mountain Elgon.

- **River Manafwa**
- **River Malaba**
- **River Mpologoma**
- **River Nzoia in Kenya**

MOUNTAIN MUFUMBIRO.

- **It is located in the South Western part f Uganda.**
- **Its highest peak is Muhavura. Other peaks include mgahinga and Sabinyo.**
- **It is shared by Uganda, Rwanda and Democratic Republic of Congo.**
- **It forms a range of mountains in the Kigezi sub-region in South Western part of Uganda.**
- **The Mufumbiro range is a home for the mountain gorillas in Bwindi and Mgahinga national park.**
- **Mountain Mufumbiro mainly occupies Kabale, Kisoro and Kanungu districts.**
- **The area around mountain Mufumbiro was referred to as "the Switzerland of Africa" by Winston Churchill because it has features which are similar to those of the Alps mountains in Switzerland.**

Tribes that live on the slopes of mountain Mufumbiro.

- **Bakiga**
- **Bafumbira.**

Crops mainly grown on slopes of mountain Mufumbiro

- **Potatoes**
- **Vegetables**
- **Sorgum**
- **Pyrethrum**

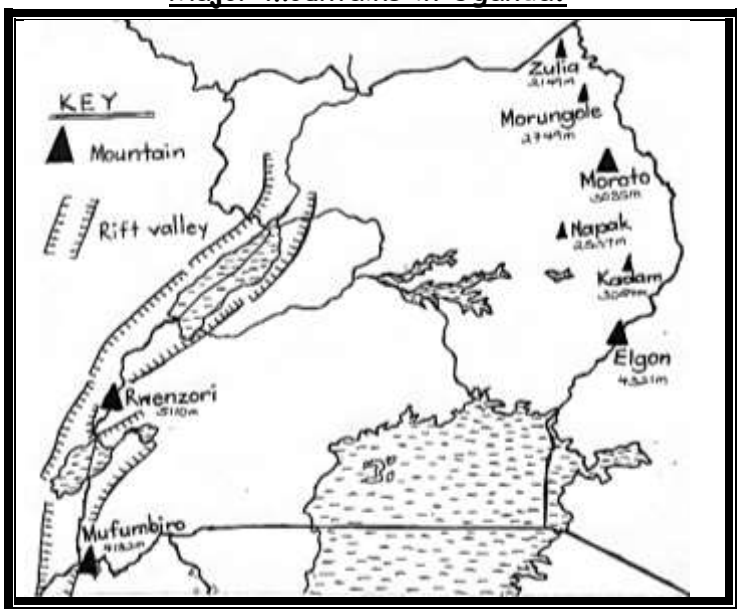
➢ **Note:**

- ✓ *The high population/ over population in Kigezi sub-region has led to the division of land into small plots in this area* ***(Land fragmentation)***
- ✓ *Land fragmentation hinders agricultural mechanisation and also leads to low food production.*

MOUNTAIN MOROTO.

- **It is located in the North Eastern part of Uganda.**
- **Its highest peak is called Sokdek.**
- **Sogolomon is the second highest peak of mountain Moroto.**
- **The Karimojong tribe mainly lives on the slopes of mountain Moroto.**
- **The Karimojong mainly carry out pastoralism.**
- **The area around mountain Moroto receives very little rainfall because it receives dry winds from the North East.**

Major mountains in Uganda.



Importance of hills and mountains

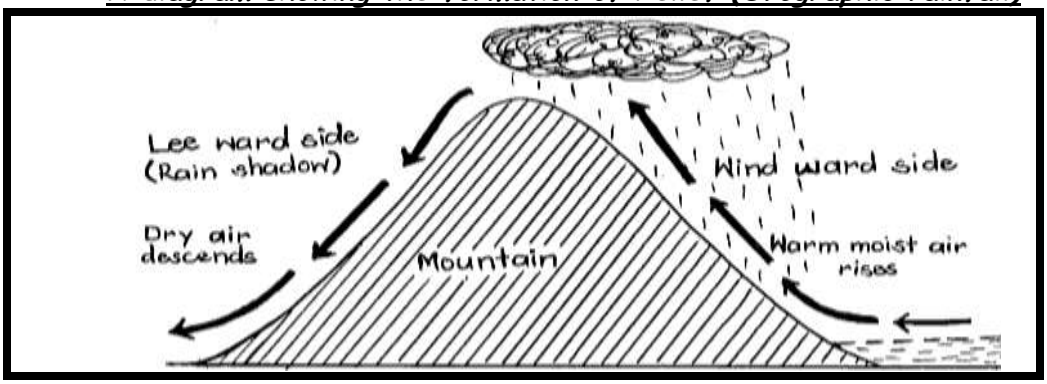
- ❖ **They help in rain formation ie.Relief rainfall.**
- ❖ **They have fertile soils which support crop cultivation.**
- ❖ **They attract tourists who bring in income.**
- ❖ **They have cool temperatures which favour dairy farming.**
- ❖ **They are used by telecommunication companies to place on masts.**
- ❖ **Some mountains are a source of rivers.**
- ❖ **Some mountains are a source of minerals eg.Osukuru hills in Tororo which provide limestone.**
- ❖ **They are a source of building materials eg.stones**
- ❖ **Some mountains form natural boundaries between countries.**

Eg-Mountain Rwenzori creates a natural boundary between Uganda and DRC.

-Mountain Elgon creates a natural boundary between Uganda and Kenya.

-Mountain Mufumbiro creates a natural boundary between Uganda and Rwanda.

A diagram showing the formation of Relief (Orographic rainfall)



Economic activities commonly carried out in mountainous areas.

- ❖ **Crop growing**
- ❖ **Lumbering**
- ❖ **Stone quarrying**
- ❖ **Tourism**
- ❖ **Mining**

Disadvantages of mountains.

- ❖ **They hinder agricultural mechanisation.**
- ❖ **They make road and railway construction difficult.**
- ❖ **Some volcanic mountains erupt and destroy property.**
- ❖ **They are greatly affected by landslides and soil erosion.**

Problems faced by people living on slopes of mountains.

- ❖ **Severe soil erosion.**
- ❖ **Much coldness.**
- ❖ **Landslides due to heavy rainfall.**
- ❖ **Poor agricultural mechanisation.**
- ❖ **Poor road transport.**

Why transport is very poor in highland areas.

It is difficult and expensive to construct roads in mountainous areas.

Note:

- ➢ *People living in highland areas (Kapchorwa) rear donkeys to use them as means of transport.*
- ➢ *Heavy rainfall received in highland areas is the major cause of landslides.*
- ➢ *Landslides can be reduced in highland areas through planting trees.*
- ➢ *Road transport can also be improved in highland areas by constructing winding roads.*

- *The government has relocated people of Bududa to safer plains and plateaus to save them from landslides.*

Why agricultural mechanisation is poor in mountainous areas.

The steep slopes make the use of tractors difficult and very expensive.

THE RIFT VALLEY.

- **A rift valley is a long and wide depression on the earth's surface with steep sides.**
- **The steep sides of a rift valley are called *escarpments.***
- **The rift valley was formed as a result of *faulting.***
- **The width of the Great rift valley varies from 30 to 100km.**

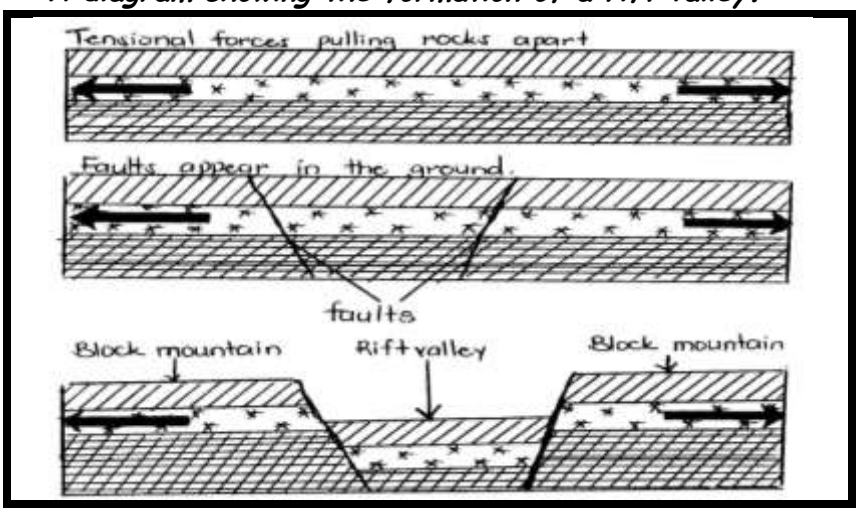
Arms of the rift valley.

- **Western rift valley (runs through Uganda)**
- **The Eastern rift valley (runs through Kenya and Tanzania)**

Note: -***Albertine escarpment*** *is the major escarpment of the Western rift valley.*

-***Crude oil*** *was discovered in the* ***Albertine region.***

A diagram showing the formation of a rift valley.



Features found in the rift valley.

- **Lakes eg,lake Albert, lake Edward and lake George.**
- **Rivers**
- **Hills**
- **Valleys**

Economic activities done in Rift valley areas

- **Crop cultivation**
- **Mining**
- **Tourism**
- **Fishing**
- **Animal rearing**

Importance of the rift valley.

- **It promotes tourism.**
- **It has lakes which promote fishing.**
- **It promotes wild life conservation.**
- **It has plenty of pasture for animal rearing.**
- **It forms natural boundaries between countries eg. The Western rift valley forms a natural boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.**
- **Lakes found in the rift valley are a source of minerals eg.lake Katwe which provides salt.**

Dangers / disadvantages of the Rift valley.

- ❖ It is affected by soil erosion.
- ❖ It hinders road and railway construction.
- ❖ Is is greatly affected by floods.
- ❖ It experiences very high temperatures due to low altitude.

PLATEAUS / PLATEAUX and PLAINS

- **A Plateau** is a raised flat topped piece of land.
- The plateau covers the largest part of Uganda.
- It lies between 200m and 2000m above the sea level.

Features found on a plateau

- Lakes
- Rivers
- Streams
- Valleys
- Hills

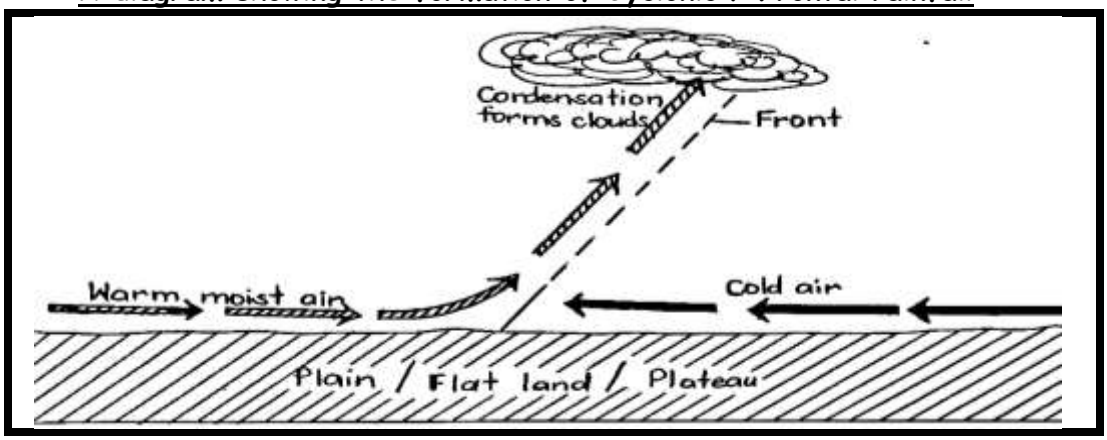
Economic activities carried out in plateau areas.

- Crop cultivation
- Tourism
- Fishing
- Mining
- Animal rearing
- Lumbering
- Industrialisation.

Importance of plateaus.

- ❖ They have fertile soils for crop growing.
- ❖ They promote wildlife conservation.
- ❖ They have plenty of pasture for animal rearing.
- ❖ They are promote tourism.
- ❖ The help in formation of cyclonic rainfall.

A diagram showing the formation of Cyclonic / Frontal rainfall



LAKES IN UGANDA.

- **A lake** is a mass of non-flowing water on the earth's surface.
- **Or**: A lake is a depression / hollow on the earth's surface in which water collects.
- **Or**: A lake is a large area of water that is surrounded by land.

Examples of major lakes in Uganda.

- ❖ Lake Victoria.
- ❖ Lake Albert.
- ❖ Lake Mburo.
- ❖ Lake Bunyonyi.
- ❖ Lake Katwe.
- ❖ Lake Kyoga.
- ❖ Lake Edward.
- ❖ Lake George.
- ❖ Lake Wamala.
- ❖ Lake Kwania
- ❖ Lake Nakivali
- ❖ Lake Bisina
- ❖ Lake Kijanebalola
- ❖ Lake Opeta.

Types of lakes.

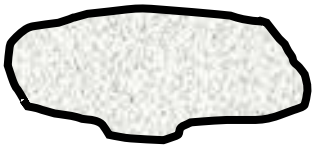
- **Permanent lakes.**
- **Seasonal lakes.**

Permanent lakes are lakes which contain water throughout the year.

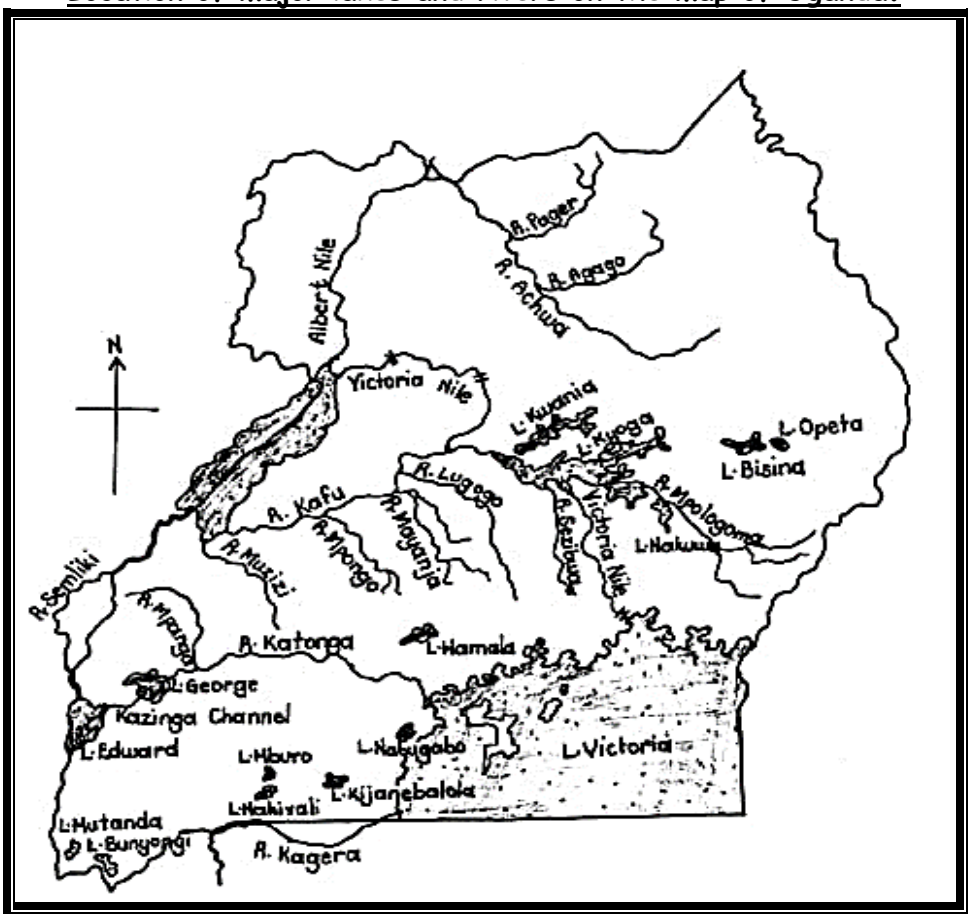
Examples of permanent lakes in Uganda.

- **Lake Victoria.**
- **Lake Mburo.**
- **Lake Albert.**
- **Lake Edward.**
- **Lake George.**
- **Lake Kyoga**

Seasonal lakes are lakes which dry up in the dry season and get water in the wet season.

	
*A map symbol of a **permanent lake***	*A map symbol of a **seasonal lake***

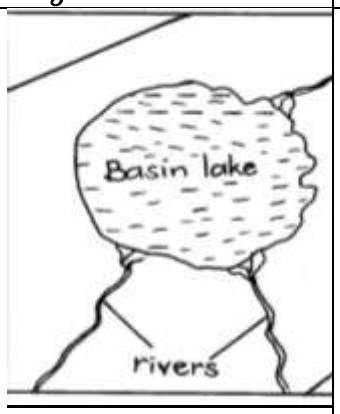
Location of major lakes and rivers on the map of Uganda.



TYPES OF LAKE FORMATIONS.

- **Basin lakes/depression lakes/down warped lakes.**
- **Rift valley lakes.**
- **Lava dammed lakes.**
- **Glacial lakes.**
- **Ox-bow lakes.**
- **Crater lakes.**
- **Man-made lakes.**
- **Lagoon lakes**

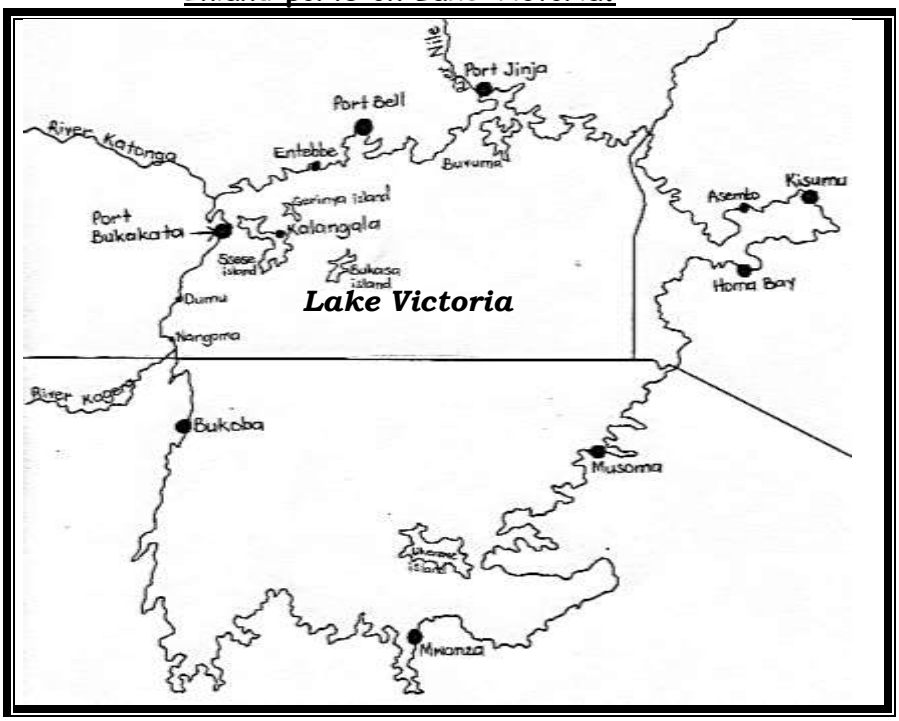
(i) BASIN LAKES.

Diagram	*Description*	*Examples*
	These are also called basin lakes/ down warped lakes. Basin lakes were formed as a result of ***down warping.*** **Characteristics of basin lakes** They have irregular shapes. They are wide. They are usually shallow. They have inlet and outlet rivers. They have fresh water.	• Lake Victoria • Lake Kyoga • Lake Wamala • Lake Mburo • Lake Kwania • Lake Bisina • Lake Opeta **Note: -***Basin lakes have fresh water because* ***they have outlet rivers.***

LAKE VICTORIA.

- Its local name is Nalubaale (Home of gods) in Uganda.
- It's locally known as Sango in Kenya and Nyanza in Tanzania.
- It was formed as result of down warping.
- It is the largest fresh water lake on the Central plateau of Uganda.
- It is referred to as an inter-territorial lake because it is shared by three countries in East Africa.
- It has inland ports which promote inter-territorial trade through handling the goods of the three East African countries.
- *John Hanning Speke* was the first European explorer to see lake Victoria.
- John Hanning Speke named it lake Victoria after Queen Victoria of England by then.
- Kalangala and Buvuma districts are completely surrounded by lake Victoria.

Inland ports on Lake Victoria.



Inland ports on lake Victoria in Uganda.

- **Port Bell.**
- **Port Bukakata**
- **Port Jinja**

NB. ***A port*** *is a place on a water body where water vessels load and off loads.*

LAKE KYOGA.

- **It is a fresh water lake.**
- **It was formed by down warping.**
- **It is located on the Central plateau of Uganda.**
- **It is the swampiest lake in Uganda. This is because it is very shallow.**
- **Lake Kyoga is shallow because it is highly silted.**
- **The Victoria Nile flows from lake Victoria towards lake kyoga. This natural evidence proves that lake Victoria is on a higher altitude than lake Kyoga.**

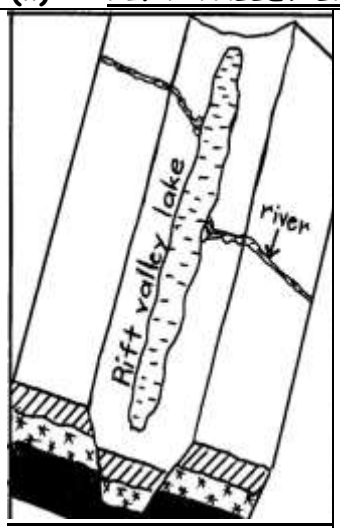
Inland ports of Lake Kyoga.

- **Port Lwampanga.**
- **Port Namasala.**

Inlets of lake Kyoga.

- **Victoria Nile.**
- **River Sezibwa.**
- **River Kafu.**

(ii) RIFT VALLEY LAKES.



Description.

Rift valley lakes are lakes which lie on the floor of the rift valley and were formed as a result of faulting.

Characteristics of rift valley lakes

- **They are long and narrow (oblong)**
- **They are deep.**
- **They are salty.**
- **They have steep sided shores.**
- **Most of them have no outlet rivers.**

Why rift valley lakes are salty.

- **They have salty basement rocks. (because they experience a lot of evaporation)**
- **They have no outlet rivers.**

Note:-*Lake Katwe* *lies on the floor of the riftvalley but it is not considered to be a riftvalley lake because it was formed as a result of* ***volcanicity.***

Examples

- **Lake Albert**
- **Lake George**
- **Lake Edward**

LAKE ALBERT.

- **It is the second largest lake in Uganda.**
- **It was formed by faulting.**
- **It forms a natural boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic Congo.**
- **Its local name is Mwitanzigye (killer of locusts).**
- **Sir Samuel Baker was the first European explorer to see Lake Albert.**

- It was named Albert after Sir Albert who was the husband of Queen Victoria of England.
- Crude oil was discovered on the shores of lake Albert.

Inland ports on Lake Albert.

- Port Butiaba.
- Port Ntoroko.
- Port Wanseko.

Note: ***Port Butiaba*** *is the main inland port on lake Albert.*

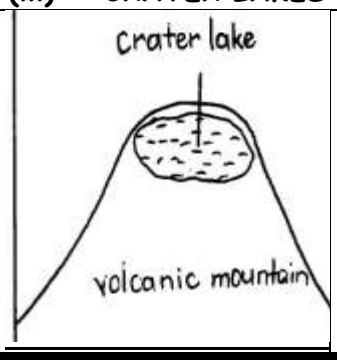
LAKE EDWARD.

- It is a rift valley lake formed by faulting.
- It forms a natural boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.
- It is connected to Lake George by Kazinga channel.
- Kazinga channel has the biggest population of hippopotamuses in Uganda.
- Kazinga channel is located in Queen Elizabeth national park.
- Henry Morton Stanley was the first European explorer to see Lake Edward.

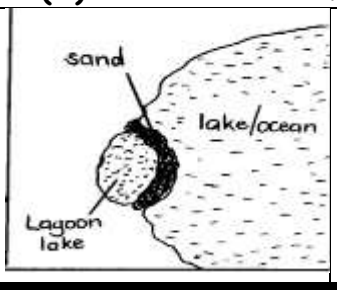
LAKE GEORGE.

- It is the swallowest lake in Uganda formed by faulting.
- It is located in Western Uganda.
- It crossed by the Equator.
- It is connected to Lake Edward by Kazinga channel.

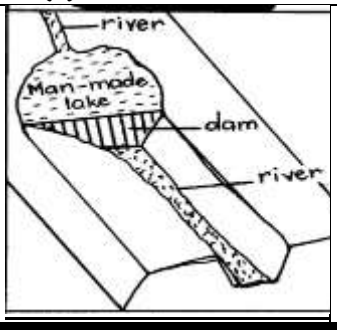
(iii) CRATER LAKES

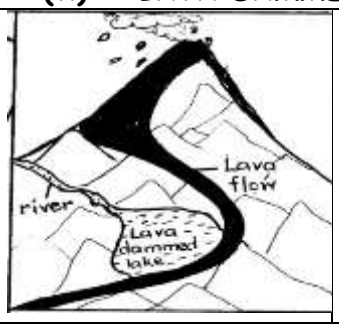
	*Description.* - These are formed on top of volcanic mountains. - They are formed as a result of volcanicity. **Note:-** *Most crater lakes are found in south western Uganda because this region experienced volcanicity for a long time.*	*Examples.* - Lake Katwe - Lake Nyamunuka - Lake Nyakasura **Note:-** *Lake Katwe is famous for salt production.*

(iv) LAGOON LAKES

	*Description.* - These are formed as a result of ***marine deposition.*** - They are formed when sand or mud separates the sea water/ part of a lake.	*Examples* - Lake Nabugabo.

(v) MAN-MADE LAKES

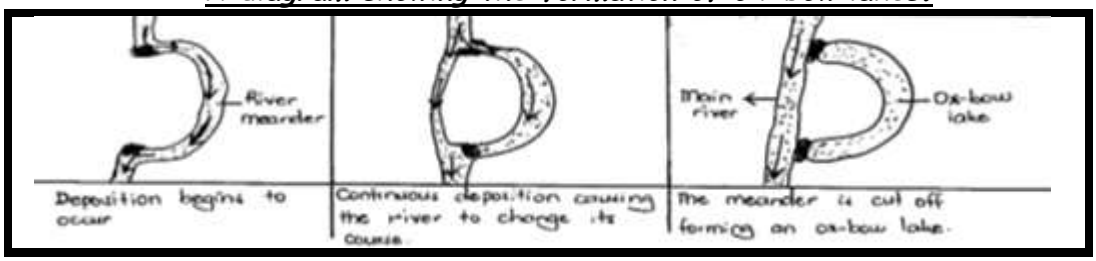
	*Description* - They are formed as a result of man's activities/ dam construction. - They are formed when man constructs a dam along rivers.	*Examples* - Kabaka's lake

	✦ They can also be formed as a result of digging valley dams in swamps. ✦ Most man-made lakes are usually small.	
(vi) LAVA DAMMED LAKES / VOLCANIC LAKES		
	*Description* ✦ They are formed when lava flows and blocks a flowing river.(as a result of volcanicity) ✦ Then water collects behind to form a river.	*Examples* • Lake Bunyonyi (the deepest in Uganda) • Lake Mutanda • Lake Bulela

(vii) OX-BOW LAKES

- ✦ These are formed as a result of *river deposition.*
- ✦ They are mainly formed on meandering rivers in the lower stage of a river.

A diagram showing the formation of ox-bow lakes.



RIVERS IN UGANDA.

- ✦ *A river* is a mass of flowing water on the earth's surface.
- ✦ Many rivers in Uganda originate from high plateaus and highlands because such areas receive plenty of rainfall which provides water to the rivers.
- ✦ Rivers flow from areas of high altitude to areas of low altitude.
- ✦ Rivers continuously get their water from rainfall, melting snow or underground springs.

Examples of major rivers in Uganda .

- ❖ River Nile
- ❖ River Kafu
- ❖ River Mayanja
- ❖ River Kagera
- ❖ River Mpologoma
- ❖ River Achwa
- ❖ River Katonga
- ❖ River Sezibwa
- ❖ River Nkusi
- ❖ River Semliki
- ❖ River Manafwa

Types of rivers

- ➢ Permanent rivers.These are rivers which flow throughout the year

Examples of permanent rivers.

- ❖ River Nile
- ❖ River Kafu
- ❖ River Kagera
- ❖ River Mpologoma
- ❖ River Achwa
- ❖ River Katonga

❖ **River Sezibwa**

- **<u>Seasonal rivers</u>.These are rivers that mainly flow during the wet season and dry up during the dry season.**

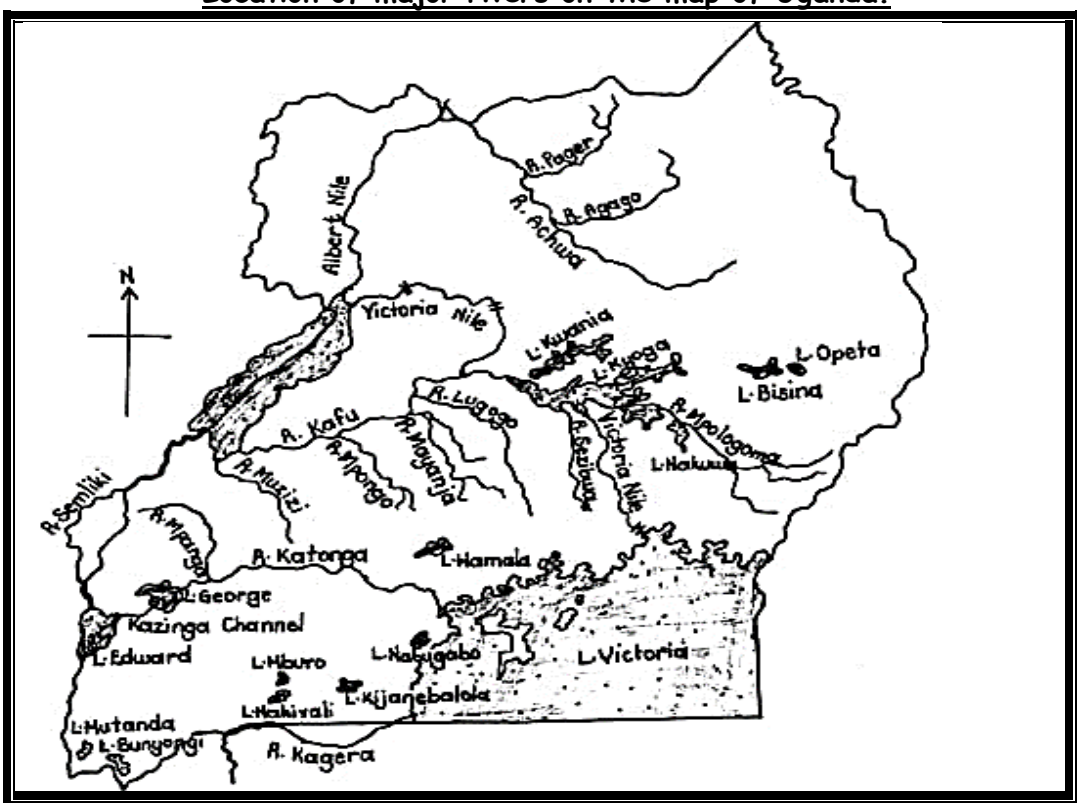
<u>Terms related to rivers.</u>

- ✓ **<u>A river source</u> is a point where a river begins to flow.**
- ✓ **<u>A river mouth</u> is a point where a river ends its flow.**
- ✓ **<u>A tributary</u> is a small river that joins the main river.**
- ✓ **<u>A distributary</u> is a small river that branches away from the main river.**
- ✓ **<u>A river confluence</u> is a place where two or more rivers meet.**
- ✓ **<u>An estuary</u> is a wide part of a river as it ends its flow.**
- ✓ **<u>A drainage basin</u> is an area of land drained by a river, its tributaries and distributaries.**
- ✓ **<u>A flood plain</u> is a flat area near a river that often floods when the water level rises.**
- ✓ **<u>A delta</u> is the place where a river forms several streams as it ends its flow eg.The Nile delta.**

Note:

- ✓ *Deltas are formed at the mouths of rivers, as a result of* ***river deposition.***
- ✓ *Deltas have rich fertile soil for crop growing.*
- ✓ *They also attract tourists who bring in income.*
- ✓ ***A waterfall*** *is a steep flow of a river.*
  Or.*It is a point where a river flows from high altitude to a low altitude.*
- ✓ *A Cataract is a series of waterfalls on a river.*
- ✓ *Waterfalls attract tourists who bring in income, and also help in generation of hydro electricity.*
- ✓ *However, waterfalls may cause water accidents and also block water transport.*

<u>Location of major rivers on the map of Uganda.</u>



Stages of River development

- A river has three main stages/ courses.

These are;

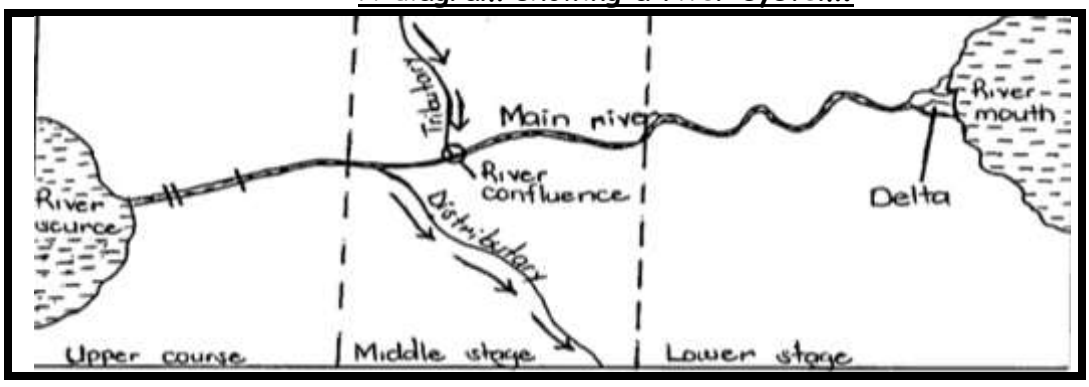
- The Youth stage/Upper course
- The Mature stage/ Middle stage
- The Old stage/ Lower stage (Senile)

Stage	*Characteristics*
The Upper course	• It has waterfalls and rapids • The river flows very fast. • It forms a V-shaped valley (gorge). • The river flows over a steep slope. • There is a lot of vertical erosion. Note: ➢ *This stage is suitable for generation of hydro electricity because it has many waterfalls.* ➢ *The upper stage is suitable for tourism because it has many waterfalls which attract tourists.*
The Middle stage	• The river flows gently. • It forms a U-shaped valley. • There is lateral erosion in this stage. • It begins to form meanders.
The Lower stage	• The river flows slowly. • It forms meanders and ox-bow lakes. • It forms a delta or an estuary. • It forms alluvial plains. • The river deposits its load forming flood plains.

Features found along river valleys.

- ❖ Waterfalls
- ❖ Deltas
- ❖ Estuaries
- ❖ Gorges
- ❖ Ox-bow lakes

A diagram showing a river system.



Case Study of Major Rivers in Uganda.

RIVER NILE.

✓ River Nile is the longest river in the world. ✓ Its local name is Kiira. ✓ It flows northwards because the north is on a low altitude.	Source	-Lake Victoria
	Mouth	-Mediterranean sea
	Countries drained	-Uganda -Sudan -Ethiopia -Egypt -South Sudan

✓ John Hanning Speke was the first European explorer to see the source of river Nile.  	Main tributaries	-River Achwa in Uganda
	Waterfalls	-Karuma falls -Murchison falls -Itanda falls
	Hydro electric power dams	-Nalubaale power dam -Kiira dam -Bujagali power dam -Karuma dam.
	Nile valley countries	-Uganda,-South Sudan, -Ethiopia, -Sudan, -Egypt. ***NB:-****The Nile valley is the area drained by river Nile, its tributaries and distributaries.*
	Sections of River Nile	-Victoria Nile (between lake Victoria and lake Albert) -Albert Nile (between lake Albert and Nimule) -White Nile (from Nimule northwards)

Reasons why some parts of River Nile are not navigable.

- ❖ Presence of waterfalls and rapids.
- ❖ Presence of floating vegetation/suds.
- ❖ Presence of dangerous aquatic animals.
- ❖ Some parts of river Nile are shallow and narrow.

River Katonga.

- ➢ It flows from lake George to lake Victoria.

River Kagera.

- ➢ It forms a natural boundary between Uganda and Tanzania.
- ➢ It flows from highlands in Burundi to lake Victoria in Uganda.

River Kafu.

- ➢ It flows from lake Albert to lake Kyoga.

River Semliki.

- ➢ It connects lake Edward to lake Albert.
- ➢ It forms a natural boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.

River Achwa.

- ➢ It is the main tributary of River Nile in Uganda.
- ➢ It joins river Nile near Nimule in South Sudan.

Activities carried out on and around lakes and rivers.

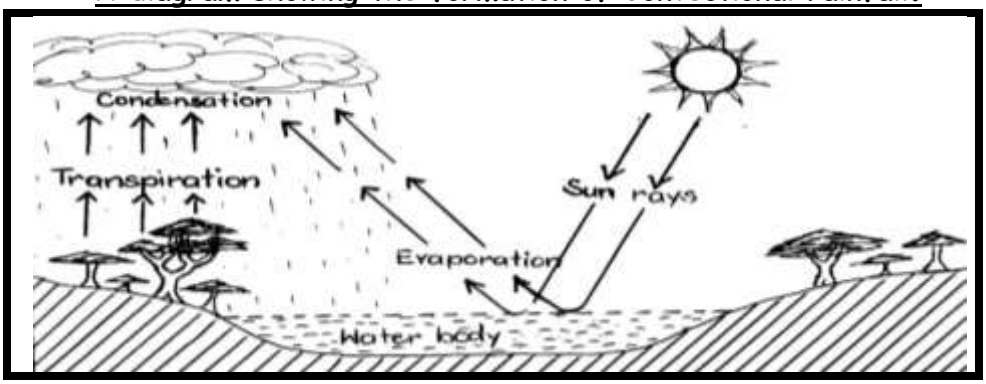
- ❖ Fishing.
- ❖ Crop growing
- ❖ Tourism
- ❖ Transportation.
- ❖ Trading.
- ❖ Industrialisation.

Importance of lakes and rivers

- ❖ They help in rain formation.
- ❖ They act as fishing grounds.
- ❖ Rivers help in generation of hydro electricity.

- They attract tourists who bring in income.
- They are homes for aquatic animals.
- They form natural boundaries between countries.
- They provide water for irrigation, domestic and industrial use.

A diagram showing the formation of Convectional rainfall.



Problems associated with lakes and rivers.

- Drowning
- Flooding
- They harbour dangerous aquatic animals.
- They harbour disease vectors.
- Rivers and lakes hinder road and railway construction.

Problems facing lakes and rivers

- Silting which reduces the depth of water bodies.
- Overuse of water from lakes and rivers for irrigation.
- Drought which lowers the water level.
- Dumping of wastes into water bodies.
- Over fishing.

Why some parts of rivers in Uganda are not navigable (not used for for transport)

- Some rivers have waterfalls and rapids.
- Some parts of rivers are shallow and narrow
- Some rivers have dangerous aquatic animals.
- Some rivers have floating vegetation.(suds)

Reasons why lake shores and river banks are densely populated.

- They have fertile soils for crop growing.
- They receive reliable rainfall.
- They have a lot of employment opportunities.

THE INFLUENCE OF PHYSICAL FEATURES:

a) On People

- The wind ward side of a mountain attracts very many people due to the presence of fertile soils for cultivation, and also receives plenty of rainfall.
- The lee ward side of a mountain has very few people because it receives very little rainfall.
- Plains favour pastoralism due to the presence of pasture.
- Road and railway transport is poor in highland areas due to the presence of steep slopes.
- Many people settle around lakes and rivers because such areas receive reliable rainfall and have fertile soils which support crop cultivation.

Factors which attract human settlement in;

i) Plateau areas

- ❖ **Presence of pasture for animals.**
- ❖ **Agricultural mechanisation is easy in such areas.**
- ❖ **Construction of houses, roads, railways and industries is easy.**
- ❖ **Natural hazards like floods are not common in these areas.**

ii) Highland areas

- ❖ **Presence of fertile soils.**
- ❖ **Availability of reliable rainfall.**

Common economic activities carried out in highland areas.

- **Crop farming**
- **Mining**
- **Dairy farming**

Reasons why there are very few people living in higher parts of mountains.

- ❖ **Transport is poor in higher parts of the mountains**
- ❖ **Highland areas experience very low temperatures which do not favour human settlement.**

b) On Plants

- ❖ **Areas around lakes and rivers have many plants due to plenty of rainfall received.**
- ❖ **Slopes of mountains have forests due to presence of fertile soils and reliable rainfall received.**
- ❖ **Mountain tops have few plants due to low temperatures and bare rocks.**

c) On Animals.

- ❖ **Plains have plenty of grass which attracts wild animals.**
- ❖ **Water bodies favour aquatic animals.**
- ❖ **Pastoralism in common on plateau areas due to the presence of pasture for animals.**
- ❖ **There are many climbing animals eg.mountain gorillas in highlands due to the presence of many fruit trees.**

d) On Climate.

- ❖ **Mountains receive plenty of relief rainfall.**
- ❖ **The wind ward side of a mountain receives plenty of rainfall because it receives warm moist air.**
- ❖ **The lee ward side of the mountain receives very little rainfall because it receives dry winds.**
- ❖ **Mountainous areas experience very low temperatures because they lie at a higher altitude.**
- ❖ **Riftvalleys and low lands experience very high temperature because they are of low altitude.**
- ❖ **Lake shores receive plenty of convectional rainfall.**



Testing Exercise.

1. **Name the physical feature that covers the largest part of Uganda.**
2. **Mention the two types of mountains in Uganda.**
3. **Name one block mountain in Uganda.**
4. **Mention the two forces that lead to the formation of Block mountains.**
5. **Complete the table below correctly.**

Mountain	*Formation*	*Highest peak*
(i) Rwenzori	**----------**	**----------**
(ii) ----------	**----------**	**Sokdek**
(iii) Mufumbiro	**----------**	**----------**
(iv) ----------	**----------**	**Wagagai**

6. **Why was mountain Rwenzori named "the mountains of the moon" by Henry Morton Stanley?**
7. **Mention the three types of volcanic mountains.**
8. **How is volcanicity important to farmers?**
9. **Why is it not advisable for people to settle on slopes of active volcanic mountains?**
10. **Apart from volcanic mountains, mention any two other features formed by volcanicity.**
11. **State any one factor that favours the growth of arabica coffee on the slopes of mountain Elgon.**
12. **Give the meaning of the term Land fragmentation.**
13. **State the major cause of land fragmentation in Kigezi sub-region.**
14. **How are hills and mountains useful to telecommunication companies?**
15. **State any three ways mountains are ecomonically important.**
16. **Which type of rainfall is commonly received in mountainous areas?**
17. **What term name is given to the steep sides of a rift avlley?**
18. **Name the major escarpment of the Western rift valley.**
19. **Why do rift valley areas experience very high temperatures?**
20. **How is the western rift valley politically important to Uganda?**
21. **Mention any two economic activities that are commonly carried out on plateaus.**
22. **Name the largest fresh water lake in Uganda.**
23. **Compare lake Victoria and lake Albert in terms of their formation.**
24. **State any two characteristics of basin lakes.**
25. **Why is lake Victoria referred to as an inter-terriotorial lake?**
26. **Mention any two inland ports located on lake Victoria.**
27. **Why do basin lakes usually have fresh water?**
28. **Why does river Nile flow from lake Victoria towards lake Kyoga?**
29. **Why is lake kyoga very;**
    (i) Swampy?
    (ii) Shallow?
30. **Name any two rift valley lakes in Uganda.**
31. **State any two characteristics of rift valley lakes.**
32. **Why are most rift valley lakes salty?**
33. **How is Sir Samuel Baker related to lake Albert?**
34. **Name the water channel that connects lake Edward to lake George.**

35. Mention the commonest animal species located at Kazinga channel.
36. Why is lake Katwe not considered as a rift valley lake yet it is located within the rift valley?
37. Name the deepest lake in Uganda.
38. Complete the table below correctly.

Type of lake formation	Process	One example
(i) Basin lakes	----------	----------
(ii) ----------	----------	Lake Edward
(iii) ----------	----------	Lake Katwe
(iv) ----------	Marine deposition	----------

39. State any two economic importance of waterfalls.
40. Give the meaning of each of the following.
    (i) A tributary
    (ii) A confluence
    (iii) A delta
41. Mention one factor that favours hydro electric power generation in the upper stage of a river.
42. Name any three physical features that form a natural boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.
43. Which type of rainfall is commonly received;
    (i) around lakes and rivers?
    (ii) in plateau areas/ plains?
    (iii) in mountainous areas?
    (iv) around large forests?
44. Why is the wind ward side of a mountain good for human settlement?
45. Why does the lee ward side ot the mountain receive very little rainfall?

TOPIC 3: CLIMATE OF UGANDA.

INTRODUCTION TO WEATHER:

- **Weather** is the state of the atmosphere of a place at a given time.
- **Meteorology** is the scientific study of weather.
- **A meteorologist** is a scientist who studies weather.
- Elements of weather are measured and recorded at a *weather station/ meteorological centre.*
- The biggest meteorological centre/ weather station in Uganda is *Entebbe meteorological centre.*
- **Weather forecasting** is the telling of the expected future weather conditions of an area.

Importance of weather forecasting.

- ❖ It helps farmers to plan well their farm activities. e.g. Planting, harvesting etc.
- ❖ It helps travellers to prepare for their journeys.
- ❖ It helps pilots and sailors to avoid air and water accidents.

Types and conditions of weather.

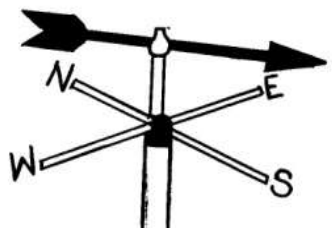
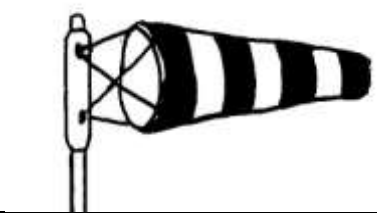
Type of weather	*Condition of weather*
Rainy weather	Rainy
Windy weather	Windy
Cloudy weather	Cloudy
Sunny weather	Sunny
Foggy weather	Foggy

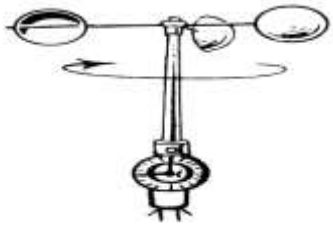
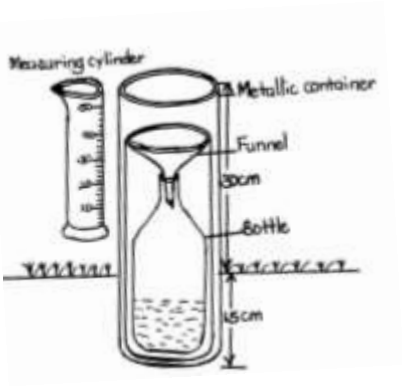
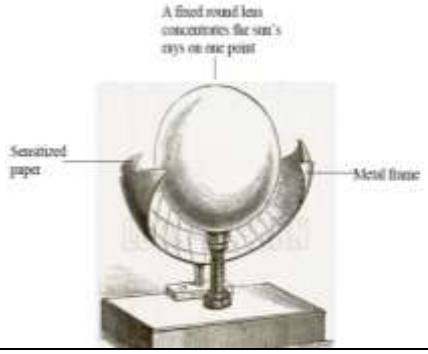
Elements of weather / factors of weather

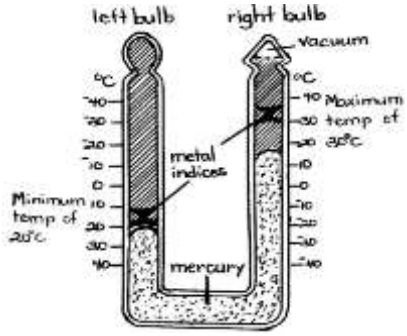
- ❖ Rainfall
- ❖ Cloud cover
- ❖ Wind
- ❖ Humidity
- ❖ Sunshine
- ❖ Air pressure/atmospheric pressure
- ❖ Temperature

WEATHER INSTRUMENTS

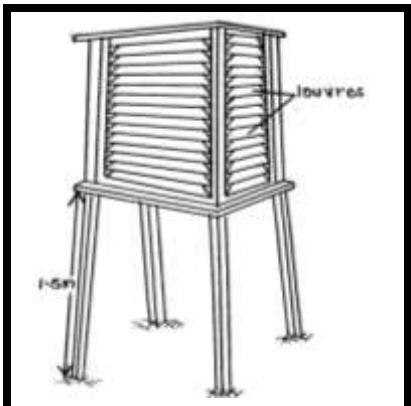
- These are tools used in measuring and recording the atmospheric conditions.

Weather instrument	*Importance*
Wind vane / a weather cock 	❖ It shows the *direction of wind.* ❖ A wind vane is placed in an open place or on top of buildings to prevent wind obstruction. **Note:-***An arrow of a wind vane usually points to the direction from which wind is blowing.*
A Windsock 	❖ It shows the *strength of wind.* ❖ It's usually found at the airports, air fields and at chemical plants. **Note:-***A wind sock is* ***not*** *among the instuments of weather found at a weather station.*

An Anemometer 	❖ **It measures the *speed of wind.*** ❖ **It has cups which trap wind and rotate as wind blows into them.** ❖ **The speed of wind is measured in kilometres per hour (km/hr)**
A Rain gauge 	❖ **It is used to *measure the amount of rainfall received* in an area.** ❖ **It is always placed at least *30cm* above the ground to prevent splashes and flowing water on the ground from entering the rain gauge.** ❖ **It should be placed 15cm below the ground to prevent the evaporation of water collected and to make it firm.** ❖ **It is placed in an open flat place to prevent obstruction of rain drops from entering the funnel in order to take accurate measurements.** ***<u>Importance of different parts of a rain gauge.</u>*** ❖ ***<u>The funnel</u>*–it directs water into the bottle.** ❖ ***<u>Water bottle</u>*–it collects the amount of rain water received.** ❖ ***<u>Measuring cylinder</u>*–it is used for measuring the amount of water collected in the bottle.** **Note**:-*Rainfall is measured in <u>millimetres</u> in order to know the depth of water into the soil.*
A Barometer 	❖ **It is used to measure *air pressure.*** ❖ **Air pressure is measured in millibars.** ❖ **Measuring air pressure enables experts to predict storms.**
A Sunshine recorder 	❖ **It shows the duration of sunshine in a day.**

Hygrometer 	❖ **It is used to measure *humidity.*** ❖ **<u>Humidity</u> *is the amount of water vapour in the atmosphere.***
Six's thermometer 	❖ **It measures the highest and lowest temperatures of the day.**

A STEVENSON SCREEN.

	➢ **This is a wooden box in which delicate weather instruments are kept at a weather station.** ➢ **It protects weather instruments from rainfall and direct heat.** ➢ **The Stevenson screen is made of louvres to allow free air circulation in the box.** ➢ **It is painted white to enable it reflect sunlight.** ➢ **It is raised 1.5m above the ground to keep it free from splash water.** ➢ **It is made of wood to prevent it from absorbing heat.**

<u>Weather instruments kept in a Stevenson screen.</u>

- **Barometer**
- **Hygrometer**
- **Six's thermometer (Maximum and thermometer).**

<u>Note</u>

- ✓ *The above instruments are kept in a Stevenson screen in order to protect them from being destroyed since they are delicate.*
- ✓ ***The Ministry of Water and Environment*** *is responsible for monitoring weather and climate, and giving advice to the public on weather conditions in Uganda.*

CLIMATIC REGIONS/ZONES OF UGANDA.

- **<u>Climate</u> is the average weather condition of a place recorded for a long time.**
- **<u>Climatology</u> is the scientific study of climate.**
- ***<u>A climatologist</u>* is a scientist who studies climate.**

<u>Main aspects/ factors of climate.</u>

- **Rainfall**
- **Temperature.**

<u>Types of climate experienced in Uganda.</u>

- ❖ **Equatorial climate**
- ❖ **Tropical climate**
- ❖ **Semi-desert climate**
- ❖ **Montane climate**

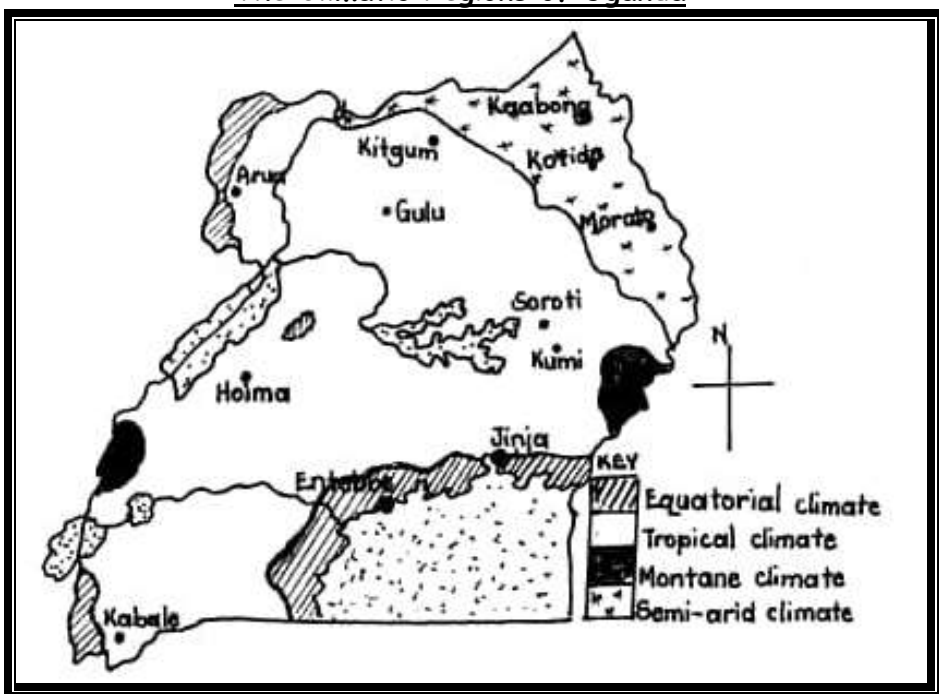
CLIMATIC REGIONS IN UGANDA.

A climatic region **is a large area that experiences the same / similar weather patterns.**

Climatic regions in Uganda.

- **Equatorial climatic region**
- **Tropical climatic region/ Savannah climatic zone**
- **Semi-desert climatic region/ savannah climatic zone.**
- **Montane climatic region/ mountain climatic zone**

The Climatic Regions of Uganda



THE EQUATORIAL CLIMATE

- **It is described as hot and wet throughout the year.**
- **It is experienced in areas along the Equator**

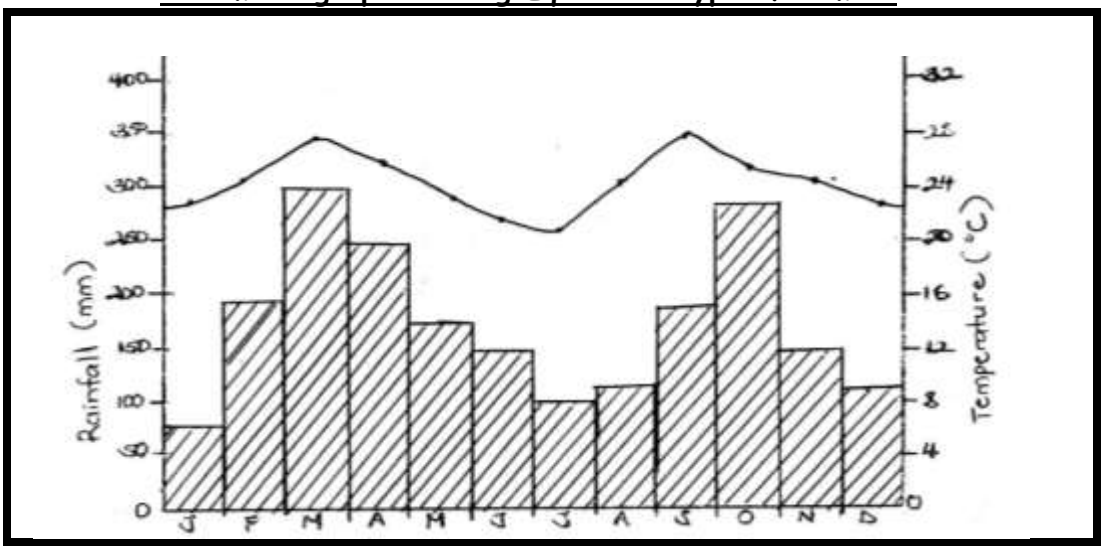
Characteristics of Equatorial Climate.

- **It is hot and wet throughout the year .**
- **It mainly receives convectional rainfall.(between 1500mm – 2000mm)**
- **Rainfall is accompanied by lightning and thunderstorms.**
- **It has no dry month.**
- **Temperatures are high especially during equinox .**
  The sun overheads the Equator twice a year on 21st March and 23rd September.
- **It has two heavy maximum rainfall seasons (double maxima).**

A climatic table showing Equatorial type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp (^0C)	23	25	27	26	24	22	21	25	28	26	25	23
Rainfall(mm)	70	190	300	250	170	150	50	120	180	270	150	120

A climatic graph showing Equatorial type of climate



- **Note**:-*The increase in temperatures causes increase in the amount of rainfall received in the Equatorial climatic region.*

Areas in Uganda that experience Equatorial climate.

- **Shores of Lake Victoria**
- **The South Western part of Uganda.**

Districts that experience Equatorial climate.

- **Wakiso**
- **Buikwe**
- **Kalangala**
- **Jinja**
- **Mukono**
- **Mpigi**

Economic activities carried out in Equatorial climatic region

- **Crop growing**
- **Tourism**
- **Lumbering**

Crops grown in Equatorial climatic region.

- **Oil palm**
- **Coffee**
- **Cocoa**
- **Bananas**
- **Rubber**

Note:- *The above crops are commonly grown because they require plenty of rainfall for them to grow well.*

TROPICAL CLIMATE / SAVANNAH CLIMATE

- **Tropical climate is described as hot and wet.**
- **Tropical type of climate is experienced in the largest part of Uganda.**
- **This is because Uganda lies between the tropics (with in the tropical region).**

Districts that experience Tropical climate in Uganda.

- **Mubende.**
- **Soroti**
- **Kibale.**
- **Gulu**
- **Mbarara**
- **Luwero.**
- **Kitgum**
- **Sembabule.**

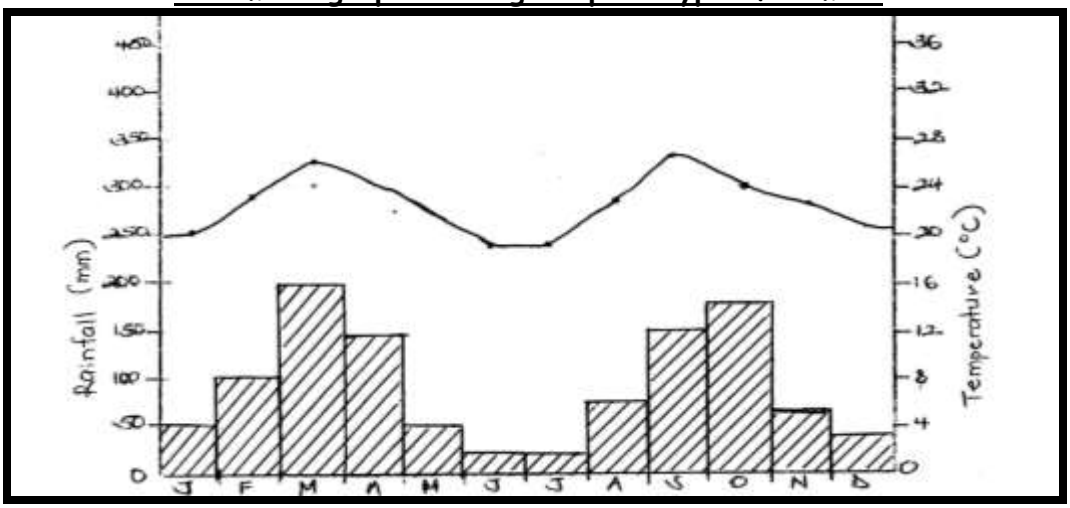
Characteristics of Tropical climate

- **Rainfall is mainly received when the sun is overhead the equator.**
- **It has two wet seasons and two dry seasons.**
- **Rainfall decreases as one moves far from the equator.**
- **Tropical type of climate is hot and wet.**

The climatic table showing Tropical type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp. (°C)	20	23	26	24	22	18	19	23	27	24	23	21
Rainfall (mm)	50	110	200	140	50	25	25	75	150	175	60	40

A climatic graph showing Tropical type of climate



Economic activities commonly carried out in Tropical climatic region

- Crop growing
- Bee keeping
- Pastoralism
- Charcoal making.
- Tourism
- Lumbering

Common crops grown in Tropical climatic region

- Maize
- Sorgum
- Sorghum
- Cotton
- Simsim
- Ground nuts
- Beans
- Fruits like; jack fruits, oranges, mangoes, guavas

SEMI-DESERT CLIMATE/ SEMI-ARID CLIMATE.

- It is described as hot and dry.
- It is experienced in North Eastern part of Uganda.

Districts in Uganda that experience Semi-Desertclimate.

- Moroto
- Kaabong
- Kotido
- Nakapiripirit
- Abim

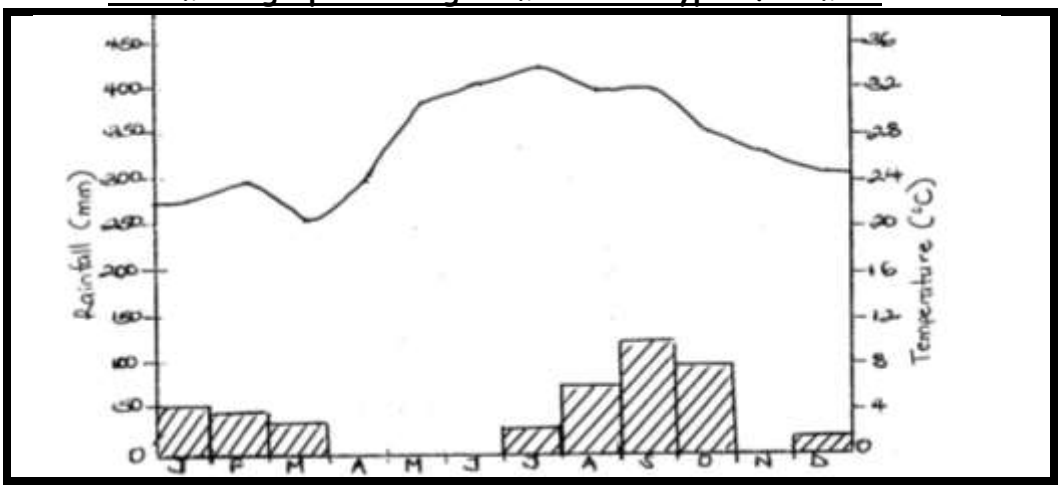
Characteristics of Semi-desert climate.

- It is hot and dry.
- There is low humidity.
- It has very hot days and cold nights.
- Skies are clear with little cloud cover.
- It receives low and unreliable rainfall.

A Climatic table showing Semi-desert type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp (°C)	23	24	21	24	31	33	34	32	32	29	27	25
Rainfall (mm)	50	40	28	==	==	==	30	75	120	100	==	20

A climatic graph showing Semi-desert type of climate



Economic activities carried out in Semi desert climate.

- Pastoralism.
- Crop cultivation.
- Tourism.

MONTANE/MOUNTAIN CLIMATE.

- Montane climate is experienced in highland areas.
- Temperature reduces with the increase in altitude.
- Temperature reduces by 1°C for every 100 metres above the sea level.
- The wind ward side receives plenty of rainfall because it receives warm moist air.
- The lee ward side receives very little rainfall because it receives dry winds.

***Some areas that experience Montane climate*.**

- Areas around mountain Rwenzori
- Areas around mountain Mufumbiro
- Areas around mountain Elgon

Districts in Uganda that experience Montane climate.

- Kasese
- Mbale
- Kabale
- Kanungu
- Sironko
- Kisoro
- Bundibugyo
- Bududa

Characteristics of Montane climate.

- It has cool temperature.
- Relief rainfall is mostly received.
- The wind ward side receives more rainfall than the lee ward side.

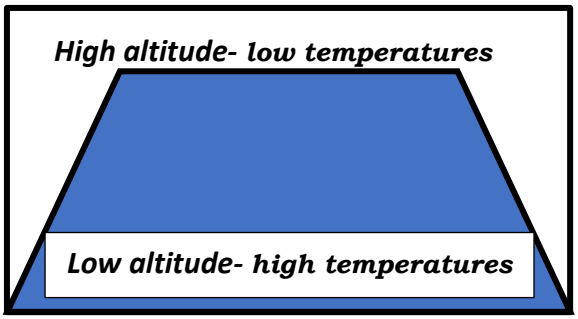
Economic activities commonly carried out in Montane climate.

- Tourism.
- Lumbering
- Crop growing.

FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE/ AFFECT CLIMATE OF AN UGANDA.

- Altitude.
- Nearness to water bodies/Drainage.
- Latitude.
- Wind movement.
- Vegetation cover.
- Human activities

(i) **Altitude**



- **Altitude** is the height above the sea level.
  - Temperature reduces with the increase in altitude.
- The lower parts of a mountain are warmer and have higher temperatures than the higher parts of the mountain.
- The higher the altitude, the cooler the temperature,and the lower the altitude, the hotter the temperature eg. Mbale is cooler than Kampala because Mbale is on a higher altitude than Kampala.

(ii) **Vegetation**

- Places with thick vegetation usually receive plenty of rainfall while those that have scanty vegetation usually receive very little rainfall.

Note:-*Vegetation modifies climate of an area by helping in the formation of convectional rainfall through transpiration.*

(iii) **Human activities**

- Some human activities affect climate positively while others affect climate of an area negatively.

Human activities that affect climate of an area positively.

- Afforestation
- Reafforestation
- Agro-forestry

Human activities that affect climate of an area negatively.

- Deforestation
- overgrazing
- Bush burning
- Swamp drainage
- Industrialisation

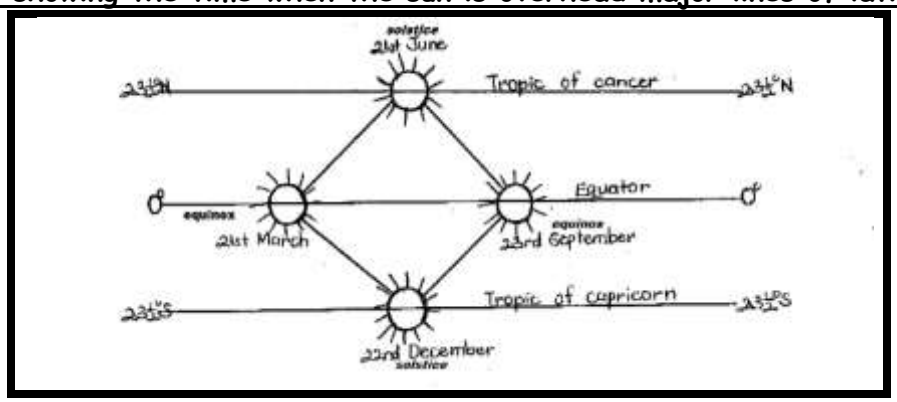
(iv) **Latitude.**

- **Latitude** is the distance in degrees North or South of the equator.
  - Areas which are near the Equator are hotter than those which are far away from the equator.
- Low latitude areas are areas which are near the equator, and are usually very hot.
- High latitude areas are areas which are far away from the Equator and are usually cool.
- Areas which are far away from the Equator are usually very cool because they receive slanting sun rays which travel a very long distance to the earth.

Note;

- *Most parts of Uganda are always hot because the sun is overhead Uganda throughout the year.*
- ***The Revolution of the earth*** *(in 365days) causes changes in seasons. ie. wet season and dry season.*
- ***Tropical region*** *is the area of land lying between the Tropic of cancer and Tropic of capricorn.*
- ***Equinox*** *is the time of the year when the sun is overhead the equator.*
- *The days and nights are always equal whenever the sun is overhead the equator.*
- *Very high temperatures are experienced around equinoxes.*
- ***Solstice*** *is the time of the year when the sun is overhead the tropics.*

A diagram showing the time when the sun is overhead major lines of latitude.



(v) Nearness to water bodies (Drainage)

- ❖ **Areas near large water bodies usually receive more rainfall than those which are far away from large water bodies.**

- **Areas near large water bodies usually receive convectional rainfall.**
- **Winds that blow over large water bodies pick a lot of moisture which rises and condenses to form convectional rainfall.**

Note: *-Water bodies modify climate by helping in the formation of convectional rainfall through evaporation.*

Characteristics of convectional rainfall

- **It is mostly received in the afternoon.**
- **It is usually accompanied by lightning and thunderstorms.**
- **It is mostly received in areas that experience a lot of evaporation and transpiration.**

(vi) Prevailing winds.

- ❖ **Areas that receive warm moist air receive plenty of rainfallwhile those that receive dry winds usually receive plenty of rainfall.**

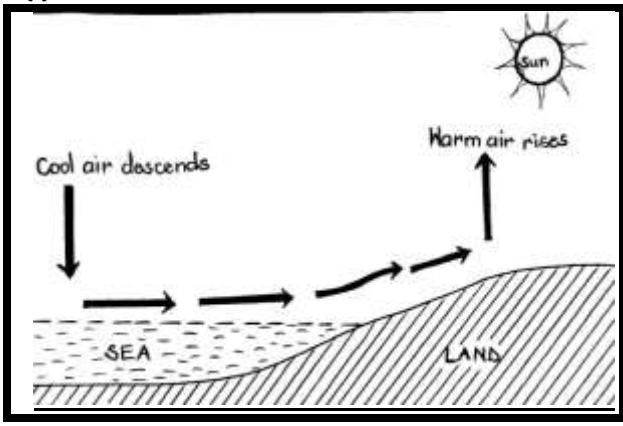
BREEZES.

- **A breeze is the movement of air from a cool region to a warm region.**

Types of breezes.

- **Sea breeze**
- **Land breeze**

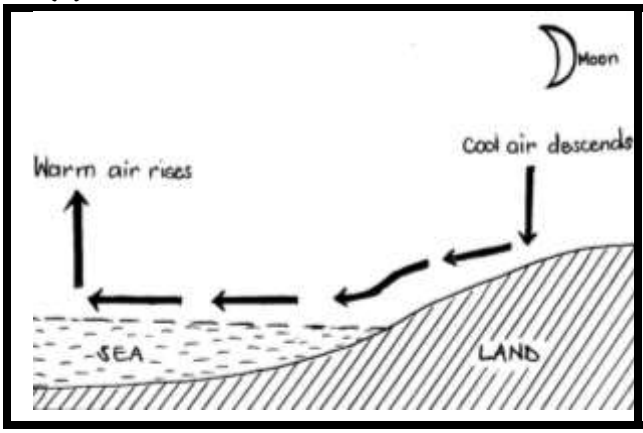
(i) Sea breeze



- ***This is the movement of cool air from the sea towards land.***
- **It takes place during the *day.***
- **During the day, the land is heated faster than water bodies.**
- **The warm air on land rises and cold air from the sea moves towards land to replace it.**

NB:- *Sea breezes help in formation of convectional rainfall.*

(ii) Land breeze



- This is the movement of cold air from land towards the sea.
- It takes place during the ***night.***
- At night, the land cools faster than the sea.
- The warm air from the sea where pressure is low rises and the cooler air blows from land towards the sea to replace it.

THE INFLUENCE OF CLIMATE ON HUMAN ACTIVITIES

a) Semi-desert climatic region (Dry areas)

Economic activities commonly carried out in Semi desert climate.

- Pastoralism.
- Tourism.
- Crop cultivation.

The influence of Semi-arid climate on human activities.

- ❖ People grow crops by irrigation.
- ❖ People grow fast maturing crops like maize, beans, millet, sorgum etc since their area receives short rainy seasons.
- ❖ People build simple huts.
- ❖ Pastoralism is mostly favour by the presence of a large vacant land.

Problems faced by people living in semi-desert climatic region.

- ❖ High temperatures during day time.
- ❖ Shortage of water.
- ❖ Poor transport.
- ❖ Shortage of pasture for animals.

Possible solutions to the problems faced by people living in desert areas.

- ❖ By digging valley dams to store water.
- ❖ By practising irrigation farming to increase food supply.
- ❖ By growing drought-resistant crops.
- ❖ By growing fast maturing crops.
- ❖ By painting houses with white in order to reflect sunlight.
- ❖ By dressing in light white clothes to reduce heat during day.

b) Equatorial and Tropical climatic region (Wet areas).

Economic activities commonly carried out in Equatorial and Tropical climate.

- Tourism.
- Crop growing.
- Lumbering

The influence of Equatorial and Tropical climate on human activities.

- ❖ Lumbering is done in the tropical rain forests.
- ❖ Tourism is favoured by the plenty of animals.

- ❖ Perennial crops are usually grown due to plenty of rainfall receive eg.coffee,oil palm,bananas,tea etc.
- ❖ People wear thick clothes to provide warmth during rainy and windy weather.
- ❖ People keep a variety of animals due to presence of pasture for animals.
- ❖ Houses are built with slanting roofs to allow easy flow of rain water off the roofs.

Problems faced by people living in Equatorial and Tropical regions.

- ❖ Floods
- ❖ Attacks from wild animals
- ❖ Poor ground transport.
- ❖ Presence of many disease vectors like tsetse flies, mosquitoes etc.

Possible solutions to the problems faced by people living equatorial and tropical climatic region

- ❖ By building houses with slanting roofs.
- ❖ By wearing rain coats and gum boots to safeguard against rainy weather.
- ❖ By creating more wildlife conservation areas.

c) Montane climate

Economic activities commonly carried out in Montane climate.

- ❖ Tourism.
- ❖ Crop growing.
- ❖ Lumbering

The influence of the montane climate on people.

- ❖ People build houses with slanting roofs.
- ❖ People rear donkeys for use as means of transport.
- ❖ People wear thick clothes to protect their bodies from much coldness.
- ❖ Thick forests promote lumbering in this climatic region.
- ❖ People grow perennial crops due to plenty of rainfall received.

Problems faced by people living in Montane climatic region.

- ❖ Poor transport network.
- ❖ Severe soil erosion
- ❖ Landslides.
- ❖ Much coldness

Possible solutions to the problems faced by people living in montane climatic region

- ❖ By building winding roads.
- ❖ By keeping donkeys for transport.
- ❖ By wearing thick clothes to overcome much coldness.
- ❖ By planting trees to reduce soil erosion and landslides.

NB: -*Plant roots control landslides in highland areas by holding the soil particles firmly.*

FARMING IN UGANDA.

- **Farming** is the growing of crops and rearing of animals.
- It is also called agriculture.
- Farming is the main economic activity carried out by most people in Uganda.

Types of farmng.

- ❖ Arable farming.
- ❖ Livestock farming.

Systems of crop farming.

- **Subsistence farming.**
- **Plantation farming.**

SUBSISTENCE FARMING.

- **This is the growing of crops and rearing of animals mainly for home use and the surplus is sold.**
- **It is the commonest system of farming practiced in Uganda. This is because subsistence farming is very cheap to practice.**
- **In this system of crop growing, annual crops are mainly grown eg. Beans, maize, cassava, peas, irish potatoes etc.**

Advantages of subsistence farming.

- **It is cheap to practice.**
- **It does not require a large piece of land.**
- **It promotes food security.**
- **It requires simple tools.**
- **It requires less labour force.**
- **It does not require a large piece of land.**

Disadvantages of subsistence farming.

- **A farmer earns less income.**
- **It leads to low productivity.**
- **It does not encourage economic development.**

MIXED FARMING.

- **Mixed farming is the growing of crops and rearing of animals on the same piece of land.**

Advantages of mixed farming.

- **Farmers gets double income.**
- **The farmer can get manure for his crops from animals.**
- **Animals can easily depend on crops for food.**
- **A farmer gets a balanced diet.**

Disadvantages of mixed farming.

- **It is expensive to start and manage.**
- **It requires skilled labour.**
- **Animals can easily escape and destroy the crops.**
- **It requires a large piece of land.**

PLANTATION FARMING.

- **This is the growing of one perennial crop on a large scale.**
- **Plantation farming is practised by very few people in Uganda because it is very expensive to practice.**
- **Under plantation farming, perennial crops are mostly grown eg. coffee, tea, cocoa, oil palm etc.**

Advantages of plantation farming.

- **It is a source of employment to people.**
- **It is a source of raw materials for industries.**
- **It is a source of income to the government through taxing plantation owners.**
- **It promotes the development of roads.**
  - **Note: -*Agro-based industries*** *are industries which use agricultural produce as their raw materials.*

Disadvantages of plantation farming.

- It is very expensive to carry out.
- It requires a large piece of land.
- Crops can easily be affected by drought.
- Pests and diseases can easily spread from one crop to another.
- It leads to soil exhaustion.

Examples of plantation crops.

- Tea.
- Coffee.
- Cloves.
- Sugarcane
- Cocoa.
- Cotton.
- Oil palm
- Sisal.

TEA.

Tea is a beverage crop.



Examples of plantations for tea.

- Kasaku tea plantation.
- Igara tea plantation.
- Nakigala tea plantation.

Tea growing districts.

- Mukono.
- Rukungiri.
- Kabalore.
- Bushenyi.
- Mubende.

Conditions for growing tea.

- Warm temperatures.
- Reliable rainfall.
- Acidic soils.

COFFEE.



- It is a beverage crop.
- It contains caffeine.

Types of coffee.

- Arabica coffee (grown in highlands).
- Robusta coffee (grown in low lands).
- Clonal coffee (improved robusta).

Advantages of growing clonal coffee over other types of coffee.

- It is more resistant to diseases than other types.
- It matures faster than other types.
- It gives more yields than other types.

Factors tha favour the growing of arabica coffee on the slopes of mountain Elgon.

- Presence of deep volcanic fertile soils.
- Presence of heavy rainfall received.

Note:

- ✓ *Coffee is harvested by hand picking of berries.*
- ✓ *Arabica coffee is mainly grown by the Bagishu on the slopes of mountain Elgon and the Bakonzo on the slopes of mountain Rwenzori.*

SUGARCANE

- Sugarcane stems are crushed to get juice which makes sugar crystals.

Sugarcane plantations in Uganda.

- Kakira sugarcane plantation in Jinja.
- Lugazi sugarcane plantation in Buikwe.
- Kinyara sugar works in Masindi.
- Sango bay in Rakai.

WHEAT.

- It is a cereal crop which requires low temperature and heavy rainfall.
- Grain provide flour used in baking.

Districts that grow wheat.

- Kapchorwa.
- Kisoro.
- Bundibugyo.

COTTON.

- It is a fibre crop used in textile industries.
- It is grown using seeds and harvested by hand picking.
- It is taken to ginneries to remove seeds and remain with lint.
- The lint is processed into threads by spinning.
- Kenneth Borup was a missionary who introduced the fast growing cotton seeds in Uganda in 1903.
- Sir Hesketh Bell encouraged cotton growing in uganda.

  Why the British colonialists encouraged cash crop growing in uganda.

  - They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.
  - They wanted the natives to get income and pay taxes.
    - **Note:**
      - ✓ *The introduction of synthetic fibres eg.Nylon has reduced the market for cotton hence leading to reduction in cotton production.*
      - ✓ Textile industries areindustries that use cotton as their raw material eg. Nyanza Textile Imdustries Limited (NYTIL)

Cotton growing districts in Uganda.

- Kasese.
- Iganga.
- Kamuli.

Uses of cotton.

- It is used for making threads.
- It is used for making clothes.
- It is used making cotton wool.
- Cotton seeds are used to make animal feeds.

Problems faced by cotton growers.

- Cotton pests and diseases.
- Harsh climate changes.
- Fluctuation of cotton prices.
- Competition from cotton growers.

TOBACCO.

- It is grown in West Nile.
- It is used to make cigarettes.

- British America Tobacco (BAT) is the body responsible for marketing and processing tobacco.
- The introduction of the tobacco control bill has led to the reduction in tobacco production in West Nile.

OIL PALM.

- Oil palm is mainly grown in Kalangala by BIDCO oil company.
- Oil palm is used to get palm oil.

Products got from palm oil.

- Palm Wine
- Soap
- Cooking Oil
- Margarine
- Candles

Factors that favour oil palm growing.

- Presence of heavy rainfall.
- Presence of high temperature.
- Well drained fertile soils.

Note:

- *Harvested oil palm nuts are transported to Jinja for processing and Bidco cooking oil, Bidco washing soap and other products are obtained.*

TYPES OF CROPS.

- Traditional cash crops.
- Non-traditional cash crops.

(i) **TRADITIONAL CASH CROPS.**

- Traditional cash crops are crops which were originally grown for sale.

Examples of traditional cash crops.

- Coffee
- Tobacco
- Cocoa
- Sisal
- Cotton
- Tea
- Oil palm
- Rubber

Why people are encouraged to grow traditional cash crops.

- To promote export trade.
- To get raw materials for industries.

Products obtained/ made from different cash crops

Crop	*Product(s)*
Cotton	Clothes, cotton wool, threads
Pyrethrum	Insecticides
Oil palm	Palm oil used for making cooking oil, soap, margarine etc.
Tea	Tea leaves
Tobacco	Cigarettes
Sun flower	Cooking oil
Sisal	Ropes, strings, sacks
coffee	Coffee powder, gun powder.
Maize	Maize flour
Rubber	Latex for making gloves,balls, shoe soles, car tyres, erasers etc

(ii) NON-TRADITIONAL CASH CROPS.

- Non-traditional cash crops are crops which were originally grown for food but can now be sold.

Why the government is encouraging people to grow more non-traditiional cash crops.

- ❖ They have a large market.
- ❖ To promote food security in the country.

Examples of Non-traditional cash crops.

- ❖ Beans
- ❖ Maize
- ❖ Cassava
- ❖ Banana
- ❖ Yams
- ❖ Rice
- ❖ Ground nuts
- ❖ Soya beans
- ❖ Vegetables like cabbage

PERENNIAL CROPS.

- These are crops which take a long time to mature and are harvested several times.
- Most of the traditional cash crops are perennial.

Examples of perennial crops.

- ❖ Coffee
- ❖ Tea
- ❖ Rubber
- ❖ Cocoa
- ❖ Mango plants
- ❖ Oil palm
- ❖ Sisal

ANNUAL CROPS.

- These are crops which take a short time to mature and are harvested once.

Examples of annual crops.

- ❖ Maize
- ❖ Beans
- ❖ Rice
- ❖ Cotton
- ❖ Tobacco
- ❖ Millet
- ❖ Sorghum
- ❖ Cassava
- ❖ Peas

IRRIGATION FARMING IN UGANDA.

- Irrigation is the artificial supply of water on land to support plant growth.
- Irrigation farming is the system of crop growing in which land is supplied with water by human means to support crop growth.
- Irrigation scheme is an area of land which is supplied with water by human means to support crop growth.
- Irrigation schemes are mostly set up in areas that do not receive reliable rainfall (dry areas).
- These areas must be having reliable permanent sources of water.
- Irrigation farming is not well developed in North Eastern uganda because the area has few reliable permanent sources of water.

Irrigation schemes in Uganda.

- Doho irrigation scheme for rice
- Tilda (Kibimba) irrigation scheme.
- Kiige irrigation scheme for citrus fruits.
- Ongom irrigation scheme in Lira for citrus fruits.
- Olweny swamp irrigation scheme in Lira for rice
- Nsimbe and Rosebud irrigation schemes for flowers.

Irrigation scheme	*Source of water*	*District / country*	*Crops grown*
Doho	**R. Manafwa**	**Butaleja**	**Rice.**
Mubuku	**R. Mubuku And R. Sebwe**	**Kasese**	**Vegetables, maize**
Tilda (Kibimba)	**R. Mpologoma**	**Bugiri**	**Rice**
Sango Bay	**L. Victoria**	**Rakai**	**Sugarcanes and Maize**
Kakira	**L. Victoria**	**Jinja**	**Sugarcanes**
Lugazi	**L. Victoria**	**Buikwe**	**Sugarcanes**
Pabo	**R. Achwa**	**Kitgum**	**Rice**
Kiige	**L. Nabigaga**	**Kamuli**	**Citrus fruits**
Agoro	**R. Agago**	**Lamwo**	**Tomatoes, Okra, Maize**

Common methods of Irrigation.

- **Gravity flow method**
- **Overhead sprinkler method**

Advantages of Irrigation farming.

- **Crops are grown at any time of the year.**
- **It promotes food security in the country.**
- **Irrigation farming helps to put idle dry land into use.**
- **Crops grow well without being affected by sunshine.**

Disadvantages of Irrigation farming.

- **It is very expensive to practice.**
- **It is not possible where there is no reliable source of water.**
- **It leads to soil leaching.**

Note:-*Leaching* *is the sinking of soil nutrients to deeper layers where plant roots can not reach.*

Ways of caring for crops in the garden.

- **By weeding them.**
- **By thinning.**
- **By pruning them.**
- **By watering the crops.**

Factors that have promoted farming in Uganda

- **Presence of fertile soils.**
- **Presence of reliable rainfall.**
- **Availability of ready market for agricultural produce.**
- **Improved transport and communication network.**
- **Political stability in an area.**
- **Availability of ready market for agricultural produce.**
- **Presence of large labour force.**

Importance of farming.

- **It is a source of food to people.**
- **It is a source of raw materials for industries.**
- **It has promoted the development of roads and railways.**
- **It is a source of employment to people.**
- **It is a source of revenue to the government.**

Problems faced by farmers.

- **Shortage of funds/ limited capital.**
- **Prolonged drought.**
- **Outbreak of crop pests and diseases.**
- **Limited market for farm produce.**

- Poor transport network.
- Political instability in some parts of the country.
- Shortage of land for crop growing in some areas eg in towns.
- Changes in prices/unstable prices for agricultural produce.
- Rural-urban migration which reduces labour force on farms in rural areas.

Possible solutions to the problems affecting agricultural development in Uganda.

- By giving soft loans to farmers.
- By spraying the crops with insecticides.
- By teaching farmers better farming methods.
- The government should set minimum prices for crop products.
- By building better roads in the country.
- By encouraging the use of irrigation farming.

Note:

- ✓ *The government introduced developmental programmes such as National Agricultural Advisory Services (**NAADs**) and Operation wealth creation to help farmers to improve their lives.*
- ✓ *NAADs is working under the Ministry of Agriculture, Animal industry and Fisheries.*
- ✓ *The government also set up the National Agricultural Research Organisation **(NARO)** to carry out research on how to improve farming activities.*

LIVESTOCK FARMING IN UGANDA.

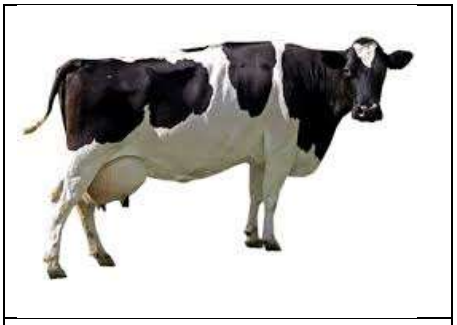
- **Pastoralism** is the rearing of cattle on a large scale.
- Livestock farming is also called pastoralism.

Systems of livestock farming.

- Dairy farming.
- Nomadic pastoralism.
- Cattle ranching.

DAIRY FARMING.

- **Dairy farming** is the rearing of cattle on a large scale mainly for milk production.
- Cows are mainly reared in this system of pastoralism.
- It is commonly carriedout in the cool mountainous areas.
- Dairy farms in Uganda commonly found in Kisoro and Kabale.



A Dairy cow

Products from a dairy farm.

- Milk.
- Meat (beef).
- Hooves
- Hides.

Milk products.

- Cheese.
- Ice cream.
- Butter.
- Yoghurt.
- Ghee.

RANCHING.

- **Ranching** is the rearing of cattle on a large scale mainly for beef production.
- Bulls are mainly reared in this system of livestock farming.

Products obtained from a ranch.

- Beef.
- Hooves.
- Horn tips.

Examples of ranches in Uganda.

- Kisozi ranch (Gomba district).
- Singo ranch
- Zziwa ranch
- Kabula ranch in Sembabule.
- Nyabushozi in Kiruhura.
- Buruli in Nakasongola.



A bull on a ranch

NOMADIC PASTORALISM.

- Nomadic pastoralism is the system of animal rearing where farmers move with their animals from one place to another in search for pasture and water.
- It is mainly carried out in semi-arid areas.
- Nomadism is commonly practiced by Karimojongs in the North Eastern Uganda.

Examples of pastoral tribes in Uganda.

- Karimojongs.
- Bahima.

Districts where nomadic pastoralism is practiced.

- Moroto district.
- Kotido district.
- Nakapiripirit district.



A Karimojong herdsman

Reasons why pastoralists move from one place to another.

- To look for pasture for their animals.
- To look for water for their animals.
- To break the lifecycle of disease vectors.

Problems faced by the pastoralists in Uganda.

- Cattle rustling.
- Poor breeds of cattle.
- Shortage of water for animals.
- Shortage of pasture.
- Outbreak of animal diseases.
- Poor veterinary services

Possible solutions to the problems facing pastoralists in Uganda.

- Disarming cattle rustlers.
- Constructing valley dams to provide water for animals.
- Growing fodder crops to provide food to animals.
- By extending veterinary services to the pastoral tribes.
- By encouraging pastoralists to keep a limited number of animals.



Testing Exercise.

1. Give the meaning of each of the following;
   (i) Climate
   (ii) Weather
2. Mention any four elements of weather.
3. Match the weather instruments in list A to their uses in list B correctly
   (i) Wind vane measures humidity.
   (ii) Rain gauge measures the speed of wind.
   (iii) Hygrometer shows the direction of wind.
   (iv) Anemometer measures the amount of rainfall.
4. When Sarah went to a weather station, she saw an arrow of a wind vane pointing to the North. From which direction was wind blowing?
5. Mention any four types of climate experienced in Uganda.
6. Which aspect of climate mainly influences the settlement of people in an area?
7. How is the Equatorial type of climate described?
8. State any two characteristics of each of the following types of climate.
   (i) Equatorial climate.
   (ii) Tropical climate.
   (iii) Semi-desert climate.
9. Mention any two economic activities that are commonly done in the Equatorial type of climate.
10. State the major economic activity carried out by most people in North Eastern Uganda.
11. Mention any four factors that influence the climate of Uganda.
12. Give the meaning of the term Altitude.
13. How does altitude influence the climate of an area?
14. Mention any three human activities that negatively affect the climate of an area.
15. State the effect of the revolution of the earth.
16. Mention the two months of the year when equinox is experienced.
17. How do lakes and rivers help to improve climate of an area?
18. State any two characteristics of convectional rainfall.
19. How can crop growing be made possible in semi-arid areas of Uganda?
20. Mention any two economic activities that are commonly carried out in Montane climatic region.
21. How does climate affect people's way of dressing?
22. Ho does climate affect the style of building in Equatorial climatic region.
23. Mention any two problems facing people living in montane climatic region.
24. Give any two ways crop production can be improved in Semi-arid areas of Uganda.
25. How are donkeys useful to people of Kapchorwa district?
26. Mention the best way of controlling landslides in mountainous areas.
27. Why do most farmers in Uganda practice subsistence farming? Give any two reasons?
28. state any two advantages of subsistence farming.
29. Name the major cash crop grown in West Nile sub-region.
30. Mention any two products obtained from Latex.
31. Name the crop raw material used for making insecticides.
32. State any two factors that favour oil palm growing in Kalangala district.

33. What is Irrigation farming?
34. Complete the table below correctly.

Irrigation scheme	Crop	Water source.
Kiige	----------	----------
Doho	----------	River Manafwa
----------	Rice	River Mpologoma
Mubuku	----------	----------

35. State any two advantages of irrigation farming.
36. How has crop cultivation promoted industrial development in Uganda?
37. State any three problems facing farmers in Uganda.
38. Give one way the government can help to improve the lives of farmers in our locality.
39. Write NAADs in full.
40. Mention one tribe that carries out out pastoralism as its major occupation.
41. Give any two reasons why the above tribe lives a nomadic way of life.
42. State any two problems faced by pastoralists in Uganda.
43. How are valley dams useful to people of North Eastern Uganda?
44. Mention any two products obtained from a dairy farm.
45. Give one way the government has helped the Kariomojongs to live a settled life.

TOPIC 4: **VEGETATION OF UGANDA.**

INTRODUCTION TO VEGETATION

- Vegetation is the plant life cover of an area.

Types of vegetation.

- ❖ Natural vegetation
- ❖ Planted vegetation

(i) PLANTED VEGETATION.

- Planted vegetation is the plant life cover of an area that is planted by man.

Examples of planted vegetation.

- ❖ Planted forests
- ❖ Planted grass eg.paspalum
- ❖ Planted flowers
- ❖ Crops

Planted forests

- A forest is a group of trees growing together on the same piece of land.
- Planted forests are groups of trees that grow by the help of man.
- Planted forests are usually planted by man.

Examples of planted forests.

- ❖ Magamaga forest in Mayuge
- ❖ Katuugo forest in Nakasongola
- ❖ Butamira in Jinja
- ❖ Bugamba in Mbarara.
- ❖ Mafuga forest in Rukungiri
- ❖ Lendu forest in Nebbi (the largest in Uganda)
- ❖ Nyabyeya forest in Masindi

Characteristics of planted forests.

- ❖ Trees are planted in rows
- ❖ Trees mainly produce soft wood.
- ❖ Trees are well spaced.
- ❖ Trees are of the same species.
- ❖ Tees mature almost at the same time.

Examples of tree species that commonly grow in planted forests.

- ❖ Pine
- ❖ Cedar
- ❖ Spruce
- ❖ Fir
- ❖ Eucalyptus
- ❖ Cypress.

Uses of some tree species that are commonly planted

- ✓ Ficus tree (mutuba tree)- it is used for making bark cloth.
- ✓ Rubber tree-it provides latex used for making rubber balls, erasers, car tyres, shoe soles, gum boots, gloves, elastic bands etc.
- ✓ Grape tree-it provides grapes used for making wine.
- ✓ Oil palm-it provides palm oil used for making cooking oil, margarine, soap, candles etc.
- ✓ Wattle tree-it provides tannin used for softening leather/ animal skins.
- ✓ Mulberry-it is used for making drugs eg. quinine

Products commonly obtained from soft wood

- ❖ Match boxes
- ❖ Match sticks
- ❖ Papers
- ❖ Pencils
- ❖ Ply wood
- ❖ Wooden rulers
- ❖ Toilet papers
- ❖ Soft boards.

Importance of flowers.

- They are a source of income when sold.
- They are used for decoration.
- They are used to give respect to the dead.
- They are used TO express love.

(ii) NATURAL VEGETATION.

- ***Natural vegetation*** is the plant life cover of an area that grows on its own.
- It includes all plants in the environment that grow without the influence of man.

Examples of natural vegetation.

- Natural forests
- Grasslands
- Shrubs
- Swamp vegetation
- Thickets
- Natural flowers
- Bushes

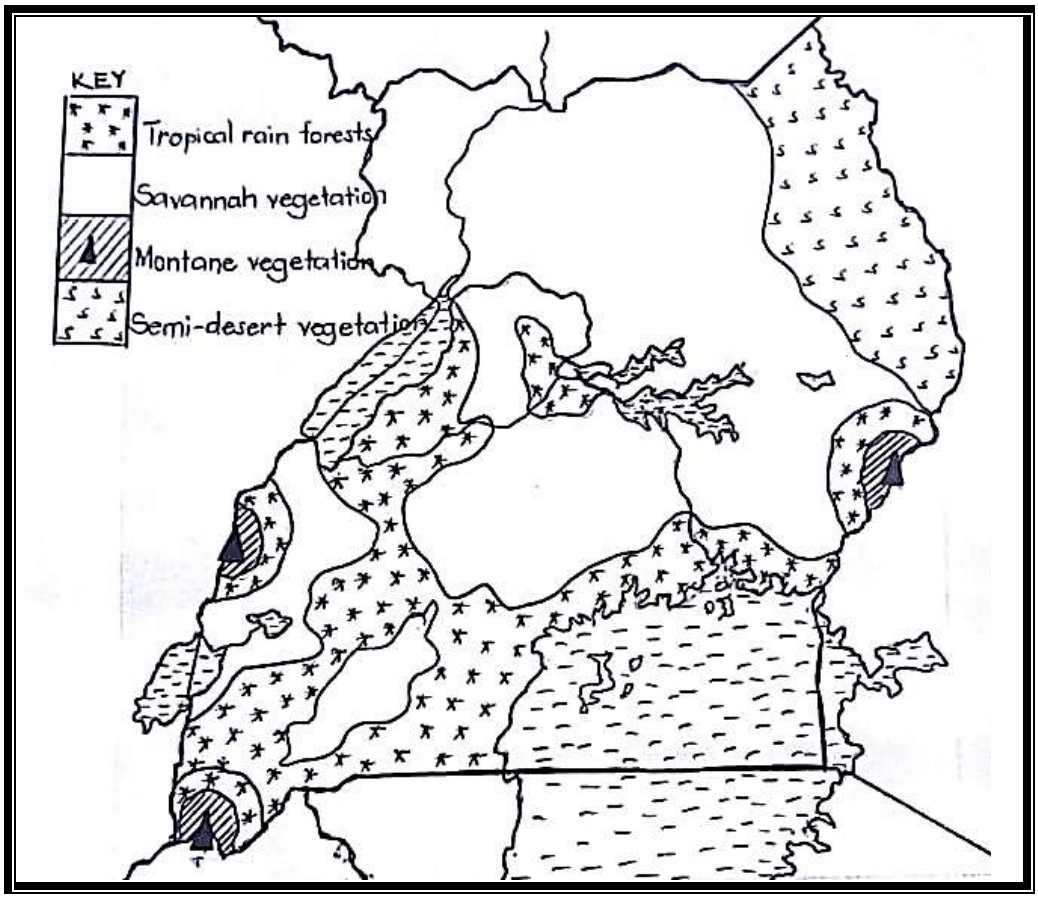
TYPES OF NATURAL VEGETATION/VEGETATION ZONES IN UGANDA.

A vegetation zone is an area under the same kind of plant life cover.

Examples of vegetation zones in Uganda.

- Equatorial rain forests/tropical rain forests.
- Savannah vegetation.
- Semi-desert vegetation.
- Montane vegetation.

VEGETATION ZONES IN UGANDA.



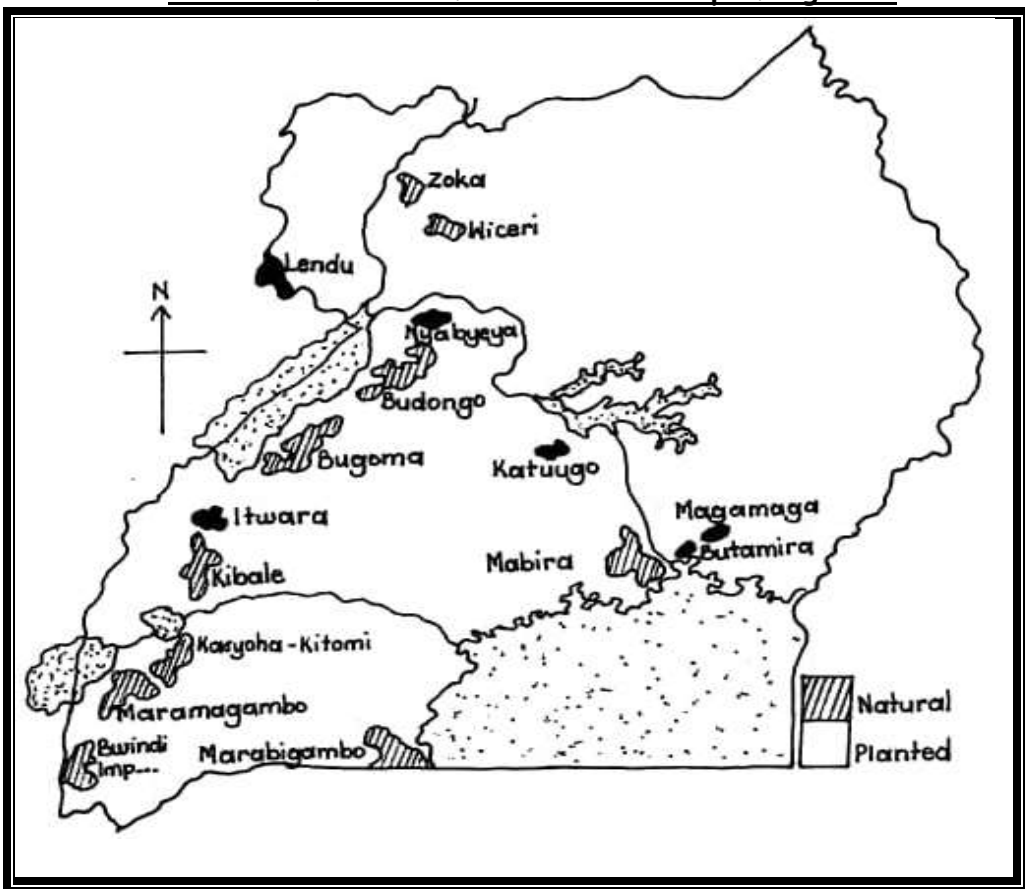
a) EQUATORIAL RAIN FORESTS

- Equatorial type of vegetation is described as ever green.
  These forests are ever green because they grow in areas that receive plenty of rainfall.
- Equatorial rain forests are also called the Tropical rain forests.
- They are called rain forests because they grow in areas that receive plenty of rainfall.
- Tropical rain forests mainly grow in areas which experience Equatorial climate, on the shores of Lake Victoria and in the South Western part of Uganda.

Examples of natural forests in Uganda

Forest	*District*
❖ Budongo (the largest)	❖ Masindi
❖ Mabira	❖ Buikwe
❖ Malabigambo	❖ Rakai
❖ Maramagambo	❖ Rubirizi and Mitooma
❖ Bugoma	❖ Hoima
❖ Mountain Rwenzori forest	❖ Kasese
❖ Kibale forest	❖ Kibale
❖ Ssese forest	❖ Kalangala
❖ Wiceri forest	❖ Amuru

Location of natural forests on the map of Uganda.



Characteristics of natural forests.

- ❖ **Trees are ever green. (they don't shed their leaves).**
- ❖ **Trees are of different species.**
- ❖ **Trees have broad leaves.**
- ❖ **Trees grow very tall due to phototropism (to get sunlight).**
- ❖ **Trees have buttress roots.**
- ❖ **Trees have hard wood.**
- ❖ **Trees take a long time to mature.**
- ❖ **Trees form a canopy (a layer of branches and leaves that form a cover to the ground).**
- ❖ **They have a thick undergrowth. This makes them impenetrable.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Deciduous trees*** *are trees that shed their leave during the dry season.*
- ✓ ***A canopy*** *is an umbrella-like structure formed by trees in tropical rain forests.*

Common tree species in Equatorial rain forests.

- **Mahogany**
- **African walnut**
- **Ebony**
- **Teak**
- **Green heart**
- **Rose wood**
- **Mvule trees (Iroko)**

Economic activities commonly done in Equatorial rain forests.

- **Lumbering**
- **Charcoal making.**
- **Herbal medicine collection**
- **Fruit gathering.**
- **Tourism**

Products obtained/ got from hard wood.

- ❖ **Wooden tables**
- ❖ **Wooden desks**
- ❖ **Wooden chairs**
- ❖ **Benches**
- ❖ **Wooden windows**
- ❖ **Wooden doors**
- ❖ **Cupboards**

Importance of forests.

- ❖ **Forests help in formation of convectional rainfall through transpiration.**
- ❖ **They are source of income through tourism.**
- ❖ **They act as a habitat for wild animals.**
- ❖ **They are source of herbal medicine.**
- ❖ **They help to reduce soil erosion.**
- ❖ **They are source of timber.**

Problems facing forests

- ❖ **Deforestation.**
- ❖ **Oubreak of bush fires.**
- ❖ **Human encroachment on forests.**

DEFORESTATION

- **Deforestation is the massive cutting down of trees without replacement.**
- **Lumbering is the cutting down/felling of mature trees for production of timber.**

Reasons why people cut down trees/ carry out deforestation.

- ❖ To get land for settlement
- ❖ To get land for crop growing.
- ❖ To get land for constructing roads.
- ❖ To get land for building industries.
- ❖ To get timber.
- ❖ To get wood fuel.
- ❖ To get land for constructing flat play grounds.

Dangers / effects of deforestation.

- ❖ It leads to soil erosion.
- ❖ It leads to desertification/ drought.
- ❖ It destroys the natural habitat for animals.
- ❖ It leads to displacement of wild animals.
- ❖ It leads to extinction of some tree species.
- ❖ It reduces the amount of rainfall received in an area.

FOREST CONSERVATION.

- Forest conservation is the act of protecting forests from extinction.

Ways of conserving forests.

- ❖ By practising afforestation.
- ❖ By practising reafforestation.
- ❖ By practising agro-forestry
- ❖ By teaching people on the importance of forests.
- ❖ By educating people about the dangers of deforestation.
- ❖ Through rural electrification. (extension of electricity to rural areas)

➢ **Note:**

- ✓ ***Afforestation*** *is the planting of trees on a large scale where they have never been/ existed.*
- ✓ ***Reafforestation*** *is the planting of trees on a large scale where they have ever been/ existed.*
- ✓ ***Agro-forestry*** *is the growing of crops together with useful trees on the same piece of land.*
- ✓ ***Forestry*** *is the practice of planting and caring for forests.*
- ✓ ***National Forestry Authority (NFA)*** *is the body that is responsible for conservation of forests in Uganda.*
- ✓ ***National Environment Management Authority (NEMA)*** *is the body responsible for conservation of the environment in Uganda.*

Roles of NFA.

- ❖ It teaches people about the importance of forests.
- ❖ It enforces laws against deforestation.
- ❖ It creates forest reserves.
- ❖ It evicts people settling in forest reserves.

b) SEMI-DESERT VEGETATION

- *A desert* is a large dry area of land with few plants growing on it.
- Semi-desert vegetation is mainly found in some parts of North Eastern Uganda.
- It grows in an area that experiences semi-desert type of climate.
- Plants that survive in very dry conditions mainly grow in this climatic region.
- Semi-desert vegetation has few trees because it receives very little rainfall.

- Trees in semi-desert vegetation have thick barks and thin leaves to reduce the rate of transpiration.
- Some plants in this area shed leaves to reduce on the rate of transportation.
- *Cactus* is able to survive in semi-desert conditions because it stores water in its stem.

Characteristics of Semi-desert vegetation

- ❖ Trees have thick barks.
- ❖ Trees are scattered.
- ❖ It has very short grass.
- ❖ Trees are short and thorny.
- ❖ Trees have long roots to tap underground water.
- ❖ Trees have thin leaves that reduce the rate of transpiration.
- ❖ Vegetation is scanty and resistant to drought.

Common plants in Semi-desert vegetation.

- Cactus
- Baobab
- Poppies
- Acacia

Districts in Uganda that have Semi-desert vegetation

- Kotido
- Moroto
- Kaabong
- Abim
- Nakapiripirit
- Napak
- Karenga

Note: -***Pastoralism*** *is the major economic activity carried out in Semi-desert vegetation.*

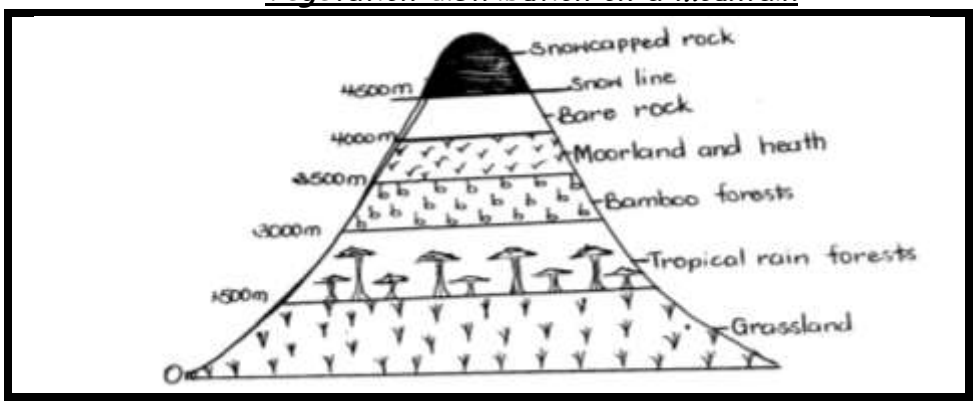
c) MOUNTAIN VEGETATION

- It is also called montane vegetation
- It is found in mountainous areas
- Vegetation changes with increase in altitude.
- Montane vegetation is mainly found on the slopes of mountains Rwenzori and Elgon.

Factors that cause vegetation variation in mountainous areas.

- Altitude
- Temperature
- Rainfall distribution.

Vegetation distribution on a mountain



Note;-***Heath*** *is the low evergreen rough grass.*
-***Moorland*** *is an area of highland covered with heath.*

Characteristics of montane vegetation.

- ❖ Trees are ever green
- ❖ Trees grow tall and straight.
- ❖ The mountain tops have few plants due to low temperatures.

- ❖ **The foothills have savannah grasslands.**
- ❖ **Vegetation grows in zones according to altitude.**

Economic activities commonly carried out in montane vegetation.

- ❖ **Lumbering**
- ❖ **Cattle keeping/ pastoralism.**
- ❖ **Bee keeping**
- ❖ **Herbal medicine collection.**
- ❖ **Fruit gathering**
- ❖ **Charcoal making.**

d) SAVANNAH VEGETATION

- **Savannah vegetation is the name given to the Tropical grasslands of Uganda.**
- **Savannah vegetation covers the largest part of Uganda.**
- **Savannah vegetation is located in the Tropical climatic region of Uganda.**

Savannah vegetation is divided into;

- **Savannah grasslands / dry savannah vegetation**
  It has short grass and few scattered trees.
- **Savannah woodland / wooded savannah / wet savannah vegetation**
  It has tall grass and many trees.

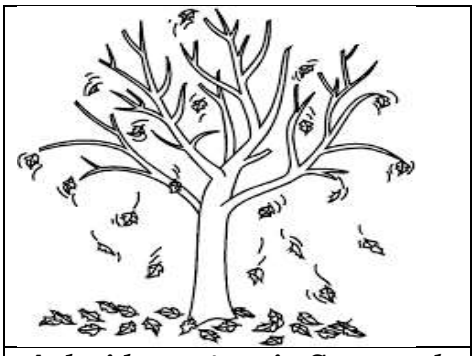
Note;

- ✓ *Most parts of Uganda are covered by* ***savannah grasslands.***
- ✓ *Most game parks in Uganda are located in savannah grasslands because there is plenty of pasture for animals.*

Characteristics of Savannah vegetation

- ❖ **It has tall grass.**
- ❖ **It has scattered trees.**
- ❖ **Trees have long roots which they use to tap underground water.**
- ❖ **Grass appears green during the wet season.**
- ❖ **Trees usually shed their leaves during the dry season. (in order to reduce the rate of transpiration)**

Note: -***Deciduous trees*** *are trees that shed their leaves during the dry seasons.*



A deciduous tree in Savannah vegetation

Districts in Uganda that have Savannah vegetation.

- **Gulu**
- **Kitgum**
- **Mubende**
- **Soroti**
- **Mbarara**
- **Luwero**
- **Nakasongola etc.**

Common tree species in savannah vegetation.

- **Acacia**
- **Baobab**

Economic activities commonly done in savannah vegetation

- **Tourism**
- **Pastoralism**
- **Bee keeping**

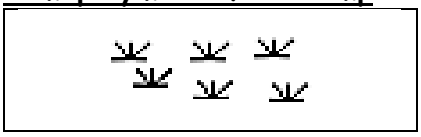
Note:

- ✓ *Tourism is favoured by a big number of game parks.*
- ✓ *Animal rearing is favoured by the plenty of pasture for animals.*

SWAMP VEGETATION

- **A swamp is a water logged area with vegetation.**
- **Or. A swamp is an area that has vegetation and plenty of water.**
- **Swamps are sometimes referred to as wetlands.**
- **Swamps are found along rivers, lakes and valleys.**

A map symbol of a swamp



Examples of swamp vegetation

- **Papyrus**
- **Palm trees**

Economic activities commonly carried out in swampy areas.

- **Crop growing**
- **Fishing**
- **Mining**
- **Tourism**
- **Pottery**
- **Brick making .**

Swamp resources/ craft raw materials got from swamps.

- ✓ **Papyrus reeds-used for making baskets, mats, hats etc**
- ✓ **Palm leaves-used for making mats etc.**
- ✓ **Clay-used for making products like cups, plates, pots etc**
- ✓ **Sand-used for building.**

Common crops grown in swamps

- **Rice**
- **Yams**
- **Vegetables**
- **Sugarcane.**

Importance of swamps.

- **They are a source of water.**
- **They are a source of fish eg. Mud fish.**
- **They are a source of minerals eg. Sand**
- **They are habitats for aquatic animals eg. Crocodiles, hippopotamuses, frogs etc.**
- **They help in formation of convectional rainfall.**
- **They help to filter water. (they have spongy-like roots which help to filter water)**
- **Swamps help to control floods.**
- **They are a source of raw materials for craft work eg. Papyrus reeds, palm leaves etc.**
- **They attract tourists who bring in income.**

Ways people misuse swamps.

- **By dumping industrial wastes in swamps.**
- **Through uncontrolled harvesting of papyrus reeds.**
- **By burning swamp vegetation.**
- **Through swamp drainage.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Swamp drainage*** *is the removal of water from swamps.*
- ✓ ***Swamp reclamation*** *is the act of changing a swamp from its natural state for other uses.*
- ✓ ***Swamp encroachment*** *is the illegal settlement in swamps.*

How people drain swamps.

- By adding murram in swamps.
- By digging channels in swamps.

Reasons why people drain swamps.

- To get land for crop growing.
- To get land for settlement.
- To get land for constructing industries.
- To construct roads.

Dangers of draining swamps.

- It leads to drought/ desertification.
- It leads to death of aquatic animals.
- It leads to floods.
- It leads to displacement of aquatic animals.
- It leads to reduction in craft raw materials.

Problems faced by people living near swamps.

- Floods during the rainy season.
- Attacks from disease vectors that live in swamps.
- Attacks from aquatic animals.
- Poor road transport.

VEGETATION DISTRIBUTION IN UGANDA.

- Vegetation distribution is the way plant life is spread in an area.
- Some parts of Uganda have thick vegetation while others have scanty / scattered vegetation.

Factors that influence/ affect vegetation distribution in Uganda.

- Altitude
- Drainage system
- Rainfall distribution / climate.
- Human activities
- Nature of soils

How the above factors affect vegetation distribution in Uganda.

Climate / Rainfall distribution

- Areas which receive plenty of rainfall have thick vegetation while those that receive very little rainfall have scanty vegetation.

Drainage system

- Areas near large water bodies have thick vegetation while those that are far away from large water bodies have scanty vegetation.

Altitude.

- Areas of low altitude have thick vegetation while those of high altitude have very little vegetation.

Nature of soils / Soil fertility.

- Areas with fertile soils have thick vegetation while those with infertile soils have scanty vegetation.

Human activities

- Some human activities promote the growth of vegetation while others destroy vegetation of an area.

Human activities that destroy vegetation.

- Deforestation
- Overcultivation
- Swamp drainage.
- Overgrazing
- Bush burning

Note:

- ✓ *Deforestation, bush burning and over grazing cause soil erosion.*
- ✓ *Deforestation and bush burning lead to displacement of wild animals, prolonged drought and also destroy the natural beauty of the environment.*

Qn: ***How does deforestation cause soil erosion?***

- *It leaves the land bare exposing it to agents of soil erosion.*

Human activities which promote the growth of vegetation.

- **Afforestation**
- **Reafforestation**
- **Agro-forestry**
- **Rotational grazing**

THE INFLUENCE OF VEGETATION ON ANIMALS.

ANIMAL DISTIBUTION IN DIFFERENT VEGETATION ZONES.

a) Equatorial Rain Forests.

- ❖ **There are tall trees that provide shelter to climbing animals.**
- ❖ **There are few herbivorous animals due to little grass.**
- ❖ **There are many climbing animals which feed on fruits in this zone.**

Common animals in Equatorial rain forests.

- **Baboons**
- **Mountain gorillas**
- **Monkeys**
- **Chimpanzees**

Why climbing animals are common in Tropical rainforests.

- ❖ **They have many fruits which climbing animals feed on.**
- ❖ **There are many trees which provide a natural habitat to climbing animals.**

b) Savannah Vegetation

- ❖ **Grass eating animals (herbivorous animals) are common in this region.**
- ❖ **Flesh eating animals (carnivorous animals) also live in savannah vegetation in order to feed on herbivorous animals.**

Why most animals live in Savannah vegetation zone.

- ❖ **There is plenty of pasture for animals.**
- ❖ **Carnivorous animals live in savannah to hunt other animals.**

Common animals in Savannah vegetation.

- **Zebras**
- **Leopards**
- **Lions**
- **Warthogs**
- **Hyenas**
- **Buffaloes**
- **Antelopes**
- **Kobs**

c) Swamp Vegetation

- ❖ **Animals that live both in water and on land are common in swamp vegetation.**

Common animals in swamp vegetation

- **Crocodiles**
- **Hippopotamuses/Hippopotami**
- **Frogs**
- **Snakes**
- **Tortoises**

d) Semi-Desert Vegetation.

- ❖ **There are few animals in semi-desert vegetation due to limited grass and water for animals.**
- ❖ **Burrowing animals are common in this zone.**

Common animals in Desert vegetation.

- Squirrels
- Ostriches
- Camels
- Newts

e) **Mountain Vegetation**

- It has many animals with a lot of fur.
- It has many climbing animals that feed on fruits.
- It has many gorillas that feed on bamboo shoots.

Common animals in montane vegetation.

- Mountain gorillas
- Chimpanzees
- Monkeys
- Baboons

PLACES FOR WILDLIFE CONSERVATION.

- National parks
- Game reserves
- Zoos
- Marine parks
- Sanctuaries

NATIONAL PARKS IN UGANDA.

- A Game park is a large area of land gazetted by the government for wildlife conservation.
- Wildlife refers to animals, birds, plants and insects that live on their own in the natural habitat.

Major national parks in uganda.

- Murchision falls national park.
- Lake Mburo national park.
- Kidepo valley national park
- Mgahinga national park.
- Mountain Rwenzori national park.
- Mountain Elgon national park.
- Bwindi impenetrable national park.

- A Game reserve is a large area of land gazetted by the government for future expansion of game parks.
- Controlled hunting can be allowed in a game reserve after seeking permission.

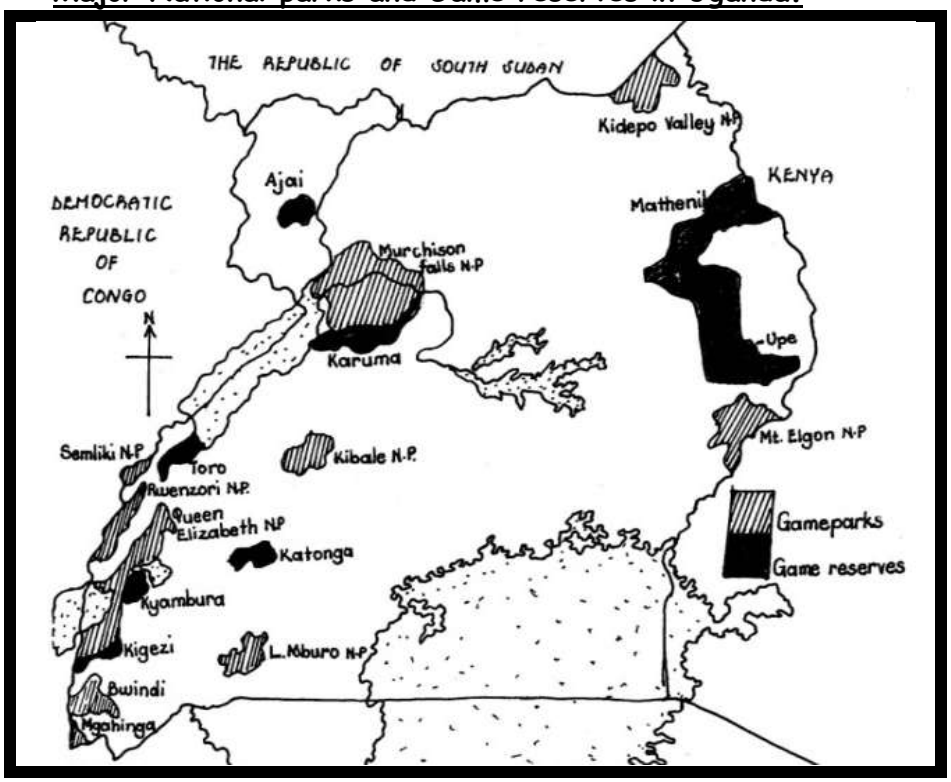
Examples of game reserves in Uganda.

- Pian-upe game reserve.
- Bokora game reserve
- Ajai game reserve
- Kigezi game reserve
- Matheniko game reserve
- Karuma game reserve
- Katonga game reserve

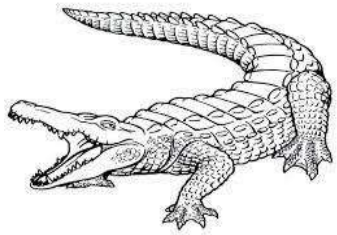
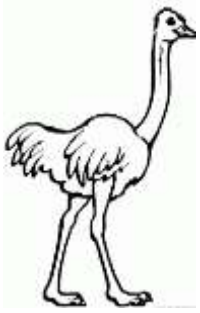
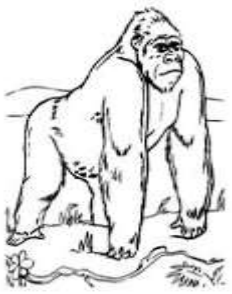
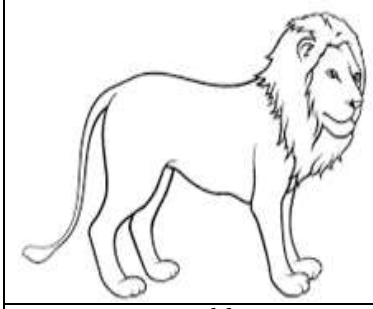
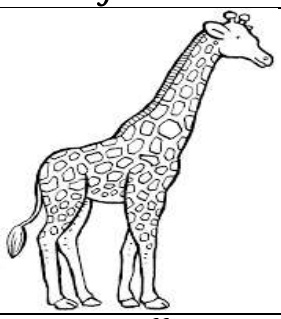
Major tourist attractions in selected Uganda's national parks.

National park	*Major tourist attraction*	*Area (in km²)*	*Type*
Murchison falls national park	Crocodiles / Murchison falls	3,840	Savannah
Kidepo valley national park	Ostriches	1,442	Savannah
Queen Elizabeth national park	Hippopotamuses	1,978	Savannah
Lake Mburo national park	Flamingo birds/ Zebras	370	Savannah
Bwindi national park	Mountain gorillas	321	Forest
Mgahinga national park		33.7	Forest
Rwenzori national park		996	Forest
Mountain Elgon national park		1,121	Forest
Semliki national park		220	Forest
Kibale national park		795	Forest

Major National parks and Game reserves in Uganda.



Major tourist attractions in Uganda's national parks.

			
Lion	*Hippopotamus*	*Ostrich*	*Gorilla*
			
Crocodile	*Flamingo birds*	*Zebra*	*Giraffe*

Importance of national parks.

- They create job opportunities to people.eg.The game rangers
- They earn income through attracting tourists.
- They promote the development of infrastructure e.g. Hotels, roads.
- They are used for education and scientific research.
- They help to preserve wildlife for the future generation to see.
- They promote international relationships.

Activities that commonly take place in Uganda's national parks.

- Animal tracking
- Mountain climbing
- Game drives
- Boat rides
- Nature walks
- Bird watching

Prohibited/ unauthorised activities in national parks.

- Animal grazing
- Crop cultivation
- Hunting
- Human settlement.

Problems facing national parks in Uganda.

a) **Poaching**

- **Poaching** is the illegal hunting of animals in national parks.
  - ✓ It leads to extinction of animal species in national parks.
  - ✓ Poaching reduces the number of animals in national parks.

Why people carry out poaching.

- To get meat.
- To get horns and ivory from them.
- To get hides and skins.

b) **Prolonged drought**

- It dries pasture on which animals feed.
- It also destroys the natural habitat for animals.

c) **Bush fires.**

- They destroy habitats for animals.
- They destroy pasture for animals.
- They lead to death of animals.
- They lead to displacement of wild animals.

d) **Outbreak of animal diseases.**

- Diseases lead to death of animals in national parks.

e) **Human encroachment on national parks.**

- It leads to displacement of wild animals.

f) **Political instability in some parts of Uganda.**

- It leads to death of animals in national parks.
- It leads to displacement of wild animals.
- It leads to destruction of the natural habitat for animals.

Possible solutions to the problems facing national parks in Uganda.

- By enforcing laws against poaching.
- By sensitising people about the importance of wild animals
- By improving on security in areas near national parks.
- By extending veterinary services in game parks.
- By enforcing laws against human encroachment on national parks.

Ways of caring for animals.

- By protecting them.
- By feeding them on nutritious feeds.
- By treating sick animals.
- By treating sick animals.

Note: -*Game wardens protect wildlife in national parks, and also control fire from destroying plants and animals.*

Importance of caring for animals.

- ❖ It promotes tourism.
- ❖ It promotes education and research.
- ❖ It reduces death of animals.

TOURISM INDUSTRY IN UGANDA.

- **Tourism** is the movement of people to places of interest for pleasure, enjoyment or study purpose.
- ***A tourist*** is a person who travels to places of interest for pleasure, enjoyment and study purposes.

Tourism is called an industry because;

- It generates income.
- It creates job opportunities to people.

- Tourism is called *an invisible trade* because it generates income without exchanging physical goods.
- Tourism is called *an invisible export* because it generates foreign exchange without exporting physical goods.

Types of tourists.

- Local tourists
- Foreign tourists.

- **Local tourists** move from one part of the country to another for tourism while **foreign tourists** move from one country to another for tourism.

Major tourist attractions in Uganda.

- Wildlife
- Vegetation
- Culture
- Historical sites
- Beautiful beaches
- Physical features
- Climate

Importance of the Tourism industry.

- ❖ It creates job opportunities to people.
- ❖ It promotes the development of infrastructure like roads, lodges, hotels.
- ❖ It promotes international relationship.
- ❖ It creates market for locally manufactured goods.
- ❖ It is a source of revenue to the government.
- ❖ It promotes conservation of wildlife.

Problems facing the Tourism industry in Uganda.

- ❖ Political instability in some parts of Uganda.
- ❖ Poor transport and communication network.
- ❖ Poor accommodation facilities.
- ❖ Shortage of funds to promote the tourism industry.
- ❖ Limited tourist attractions in some parts of Uganda.
- ❖ Limited advertisement of tourist attractions on international media.

Possible solutions to the problems facing Uganda's Tourism industry.

- ❖ By improving on security in all parts of Uganda.
- ❖ By enforcing laws against poaching.
- ❖ By constructing better roads in all parts of Uganda.
- ❖ By advertising Uganda's tourist attractions on international media.
- ❖ By importing new species of wildlife in Uganda.

- By training more game wardens.
- By building better accommodation facilities in Uganda.
- By gazetting more wildlife conservation areas.

Dangers of Tourism.

- Some tourists come as spies.
- Tourism can bring about spread of diseases in the country.
- Tourism can bring about change of culture.
- Some tourists teach people anti-social behaviours.

General importance of vegetation.

- It is a source of food to people and animals.
- It is a source of herbal medicine.
- It acts as a natural habitat for animals.
- It helps in formation of rain.ie. Convectional rainfall through transpiration.
- It is a source of building materials eg.spear grass.
- It controls soil erosion.
- It is a source of income through attracting tourists.
- It is a source of raw materials for crafts industry.eg.papyrus reeds, palmleaves.
- It is a source of wood fuel ie.charcoal and firewood.
- It purifies air by absorbing carbondioxide and releasing oxygen to the atmosphere.

Dangers of some vegetation.

- Some vegetation is poisonous to people and animals.
- It creates breeding places for disease vectors.
- It harbours dangerous animals to man.
- It creates hiding places for wrong doers.

Effects of population / people on vegetation.

- People clear vegetation to get land for settlement.
- People clear vegetation to construct industries.
- People cut down trees in order to get wood fuel.
- People clear vegetation to construct roads.

VEGETATION CONSERVATION.

- This is the protection of plant life from being destroyed.
- It is the act caring for and protecting plants in the environment.

Human activities which destroy vegetation in an area.

- Deforestation
- Swamp drainage.
- Brick making
- Bush burning
- Over cultivation.
- Over grazing

Ways how man destroys vegetation in an area.

- Through bush burning
- Through deforestation.
- Through swamp drainage.
- Through uncontrolled wetland harvesting.
- Through overgrazing.
- Through overcultivation.

Note: *-Deforestation and bush burning leave the land bare exposing it to agents of soil erosion.*

Ways of conserving vegetation.

- By afforestation.
- By reafforestation.
- By agro-forestry.
- By establishing game parks and game reserves.
- By establishing forest reserves.
- Through rural electrification.
- By using energy saving cooking stoves.
- By enforcing laws against deforestation.
- By teaching people about the importance of vegetation.
- Through rotational grazing.
- Through controlled harvesting of plants in the environment.

Ways of caring for vegetation in the environment.

- By watering plants during the dry season.
- By adding manure to the soil.
- By weeding the crops.
- By thinning vegetation.
- By pruning plants.
- Through rotational grazing.

Bodies that promote conservation of vegetation in Uganda.

✓ National Environment Management Authority (NEMA)
This conserves and protects wetlands/environment in Uganda.
NEMA is under the *Ministry of Water and Environment.*

✓ National Forestry Authority (NFA)
This conserves forests in Uganda.

✓ Uganda Wildlife Authority (UWA)
This conserves wildlife in national parks in Uganda.

How NEMA conserves the environment/ roles of NEMA.

- It teaches people about the importance of forests and swamps.
- It creates forest reserves.
- It enforces laws against wetland degradation.
- It evicts people settling in wetlands.

Importance of conserving vegetation.

- It reduces soil erosion.
- It conserves the natural beauty of the environment.
- It promotes constant supply of wood fuel.
- It conserves the natural habitat for animals.
- It promotes tourism.
- It promotes constant supply of craft raw materials.
- It controls drought.

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN VEGETATION AND POPULATION DISTRIBUTION.

- Population is the number of people living in an area at a given time.
- Population distribution is the way people are spread in an area.
- Some vegetation zones have sparse population while others have dense population.

Population distribution per vegetation zone.

Vegetation zone	*Population distribution*	*Reason for population distribution*
• Equatorial rain forests	• They are sparsely populated.	❖ Presence of disease vectors. ❖ Poor transport . ❖ Presence of many thick forests. ❖ Presence of many wild animals. ❖ Presence of soggy soils due to heavy rainfall.
• Semi-desert vegetation	• They are sparsely populated.	❖ They are hot and dry throughout the year. ❖ They receive very little rainfall.
• Savannah vegetation zone	• It is densely populated.	❖ The areas receives reliable rainfall for crop growing. ❖ Presence of fertile soils which support cultivation. ❖ It is not greatly affected by disease vectors. ❖ They have plenty of pasture for animals.
• Mountain vegetation	• Slopes of mountains are densely populated.	❖ Presence of fertile soils. ❖ They receive reliable rainfall which favours crop growing.
	• The tops of mountains have very few people.	❖ They experience very cold climate. ❖ Some have rocks and snow.
Swamp vegetation	• It is sparsely populated.	❖ Swampy have dangerous aquatic animals. ❖ Swamps are greatly affected by floods. ❖ There are many disease vectors in swampy areas.



Testing Exercise.

1. Give the meaning of the term Vegetation.
2. Mention any two examples of each of the following types of vegetation
   (i) Natural vegetation.
   (ii) Planted vegetation.
3. State any two characteristics of planted forests.
4. Mention any three tree species that are common in planted forests.
5. Which type of wood is mostly obtained from planted forests?
6. Give one reason why people plant flowers in their compounds.
7. Mention the four vegetation zones of Uganda.
8. Why are tropical rain forests called the rain forests?
9. Name the largest natural forest in Uganda.
10. Which natural forest is found along Kampala-Jinja highway?
11. State any three characteristics of natural forests.
12. Mention any three tree species that commonly grow in natural forests.
13. What are Deciduous trees?
14. Why do some trees shed their leaves during the dry season?
15. How do herbalists benefit from the natural forests in their locality?
16. Give any two ways forests are useful to wild animals.
17. State any two problems facing forests.

18. State any two ways the activity of deforestation is dangerous to the environment.
19. Write the following in full.
(i) NFA
(ii) NEMA
(iii) UWA
20. Give any two ways NFA conserves forests in Uganda.
21. State any two characteristics of semi-desert vegetation.
22. Name any two districts in uganda that have Semi-desert vegetation.
23. State any two characteristics of montane vegetation.
24. Which type of natural vegetation covers the largest part of Uganda?
25. Why are most game parks in Uganda located in Savannah grasslands?
26. Mention any two economic activities that are commonly done in Savannah grasslands.
27. Give any two reasons why people drain swamps.
28. State any two problems that are commonly faced by people living in swampy areas.
29. Mention any four factors that influence vegetation distribution in Uganda.
30. What is a Game park?
31. Name the largest game park in Uganda.
32. Which game park in Uganda would you advise a foreign tourist who wants to see mountain gorillas to visit?
33. Give any two ways game parks promote the development of a country.
34. Mention any any two man's activities that are prohibited in national parks.
35. State any three problems facing game parks in Uganda.
36. Why is tourism called an Industry?
37. Mention any three major tourist attractions in Uganda.
38. State any two problems facing the tourism industry in Uganda.
39. Name the major tourist attraction found in Queen Elizabeth national park.
40. How do hotels promote tourism in a country?
41. Name the body that is responsible for conservation of the environment in Uganda.
42. How is poaching a threat to the tourism industry?
43. Mention any two human activities that destroy vegetation in an area.
44. How does deforestation lead to soil erosion?
45. Give any two ways the tourism industry in Uganda can be improved.

TOPIC 5: NATURAL RESOURCES IN UGANDA.

INTRODUCTION TO RESOURCES IN UGANDA.

- A Resource is any component of the environment that can be used to satisfy man's needs.
- Resources are classified into natural resources and man-made resources

Examples of resources.

- Land
- Wind/ air
- Water
- Minerals
- People
- Cars
- Sunshine
- Animals
- Computers
- Telephones.
- Buildings

- Natural resources are things in the environment that exist on their own and can be used to satisfy man's needs.

Types of natural resources.

- Renewable resources.
- Non-renewable resources.

(i) Renewable resources are things which are used to satisfy man's needs that cannot get exhausted when used.

- These resources cannot get used up whenever people use them.
- Renewable resources can be replaced naturally after use.
- Renewable resources are also referred to as inexhaustible resources.

Examples of renewable resources.

- Land
- Plants/ vegetation
- Wind
- Sunshine
- Water
- People
- Animals

(ii) Non-renewable resources are things which are used to satisfy man's needs that can get exhausted when used.

- These resources can get used up when people use them.
- Non-renewable resources cannot be replaced naturally after use.
- Non-renewable resources are also referred to as exhaustible resources.

Examples of non-renewable resources.

- Fossil fuels
- Minerals eg.petroleum, sand, gold etc.

Note:-***Man made resources*** *are things made by man and are used to satisfy man's needs.eg cars, aeroplanes, telephones, computers, trains etc.*

LAND AS A RESOURCE.

- Land is the surface of the earth's surface that is not covered by water.
- Land is the most important resource because;
  - Most resources are found on land. eg.plants, animals, minerals etc.
  - Most economic activities are carried out on land.

Uses of land.

- Land is used for crop growing.
- Land is used for construction of houses, markets, roads, factories etc.

- Land is used for grazing animals.
- Land is used as a mining ground.
- Land is sold to get money.

LAND DEGREDATION.

- **Land degredation** is the misuse of land lowering its quality and productivity.

Ways people degrade land.

- Through deforestation.
- Through dumping wastes on land.
- Through over grazing.
- Through brick making.
- Through bush burning.

Land conservation.

This is the protection of land from being destroyed.

Ways of conserving land.

- Through afforestation / planting trees.
- Through bush fallowing.
- Proper disposal of waste materials.
- Through contour ploughing.
- By terracing.
- By applying fertilizers.
- Through agro-forestry.

WATER RESOURCES.

- These are important things got from water sources.

Sources of water resources include;

- Rivers
- Lakes
- Streams
- Swamps
- Ponds

Importance of water sources.

- They promote fishing.
- They are a source of raw materials for industries.
- They promote tourism.
- They are used as a medium of water transport.
- They create job opportunities to people.
- Rivers help in generation of hydro electricity.

How man misuses water sources.

- Through dumping garbage in water sources.
- Through over fishing.
- Through over use of water from water sources.
- By bathing in water sources.
- By defecating in water bodies.
- By urinating in water sources.

Dangers of water pollution.

- It leads to death of fish in water bodies.
- It leads to outbreak o water borne diseases.
- It reduces the depth of water bodies.

Ways of conserving water sources.

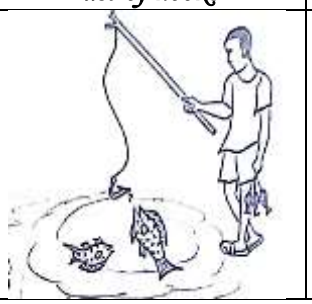
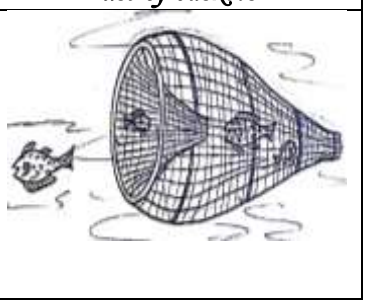
- By fencing wells.
- By planting trees near water sources.
- By using better fishing methods.
- By dredging wells.

FISHING IN UGANDA.

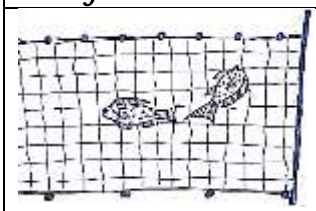
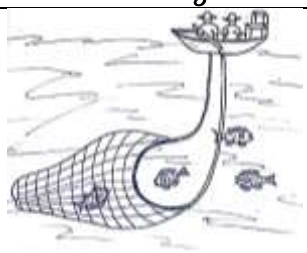
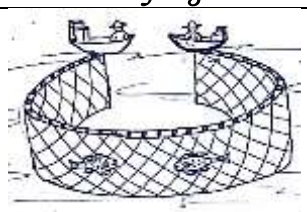
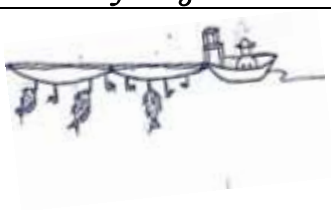
- **Fishing** is the extraction of fish from water bodies.
- Fishing in Uganda is carried out in rivers, lakes, ponds and streams.
- Lake Victoria is the largest inland fishing ground in Uganda..
- Nile perch is the largest fish species caught in Uganda while Tilapia is the commonest type caught.

  Other fish species caught in Uganda.
  - ❖ Mud fish (mostly got from swamps)
  - ❖ Lung fish
  - ❖ Cat fish
  - ❖ Sprat fish
  - ❖ Sardine fish
  - ❖ Eel fish
- Fish caught in Uganda is sold locally to the consumers while some is exported to other countries.
- Traditional fishing methods used in Uganda include;

Use of baskets, hooks, spears and using bows and arrows.

use of spears	*use of hooks*	*use of bows and arrows*	*use of baskets*
			

- Modern methods of fishing such as, gill net method, trawling, line fishing method and drifting are also used.

Gill net method	*Trawling*	*Drifting*	*Line fishing method*
			

- Fish is preserved locally by smoking it, sun drying it and salting it.
- Refrigeration and tanning/canning are the commonly used modern methods of fish preservation in Uganda.

Importance of the fishing industry.

- ❖ It is a source of employment opportunities to people.
- ❖ Exported fish earns foreign exchange to the government.
- ❖ It is a source of food to people.
- ❖ Fish is used as a raw material in fish processing industries.
- ❖ Fish is a source of income when sold.
- ❖ Fish is used for making drugs e.g. Cod liver oil.
- ❖ It promotes the development of ports and landing sites.

Problems facing the Fishing industry in Uganda.

- ❖ Indiscriminate fishing (catching of young fish) which leads to extinction of fish species. The use of undersized fishing nets leads to catching of young fish.
- ❖ Water pollution which kills fish.
- ❖ Presence of water hyacinth.
- ❖ Limited capital.
- ❖ Poor fishing methods eg use of poison.
- ❖ Poor storage facilities.
- ❖ Presence of fish predators like crocodiles.
- ❖ Fluctuation/changes of fish prices.
- ❖ Cultural beliefs which discourage some people from eating fish.
- ❖ Limited local market for fish. This is due to high levels of poverty among the people.

Dangers of water hyacinth.

- ❖ It suffocates fish.
- ❖ It breaks fishing nets.
- ❖ It hinders water transport.
- ❖ It harbours some disease vectors.
- ❖ It blocks fishing grounds.

Ways of controlling water hyacinth.

- ❖ By spraying it with chemicals.
- ❖ By using manual methods to remove it.
- ❖ By using machines to remove it.
- ❖ By introducing beetles to feed on it.

Possible solutions to the problems facing the Fishing industry.

- ❖ By protecting fishing grounds from pollution.
- ❖ By encouraging foreign investors in Uganda.
- ❖ By enforcing laws against over fishing.
- ❖ By teaching fishermen the dangers of using poor fishing methods.
- ❖ By encouraging people to practice fish farming.
- ❖ The government should provide fishermen with loans to invest in the fishing industry.

MINERALS AS RESOURCES.

- **Mining** is the extraction of minerals from the earth's crust.
- **A mineral** is a valuable substance found on or below the earth's surface.
- **A mineral deposit** is a place where a particular mineral exists naturally in large amount.
- **A mineral ore** is a rock that contains the mineral.

Types of minerals.

- Metallic minerals e.g. copper, iron ore, lead, zinc.
- Non-metallic minerals e.g. Limestone, phosphates, diamonds.
- Fuel minerals e.g. Coal, crude oil, uranium.

Types of mining.

- Traditional mining
- Modern mining.

Methods of mining.

- Open cast mining e.g. salt, soda ash, limestone, gold.
- Underground mining e.g. copper, cobalt
- Drilling method e.g. crude oil
- Quarrying method e.g. stones, sand.

Importance of some particular minerals.

Mineral	*Importance*	*Area(s) where it exist(s)*
Copper	❖ **For making electric wires and copper coins, gun bullets.**	• **Kilembe in Kasese**
Diamonds	❖ **For making jewellery, drilling machines and equipment used for cutting glasses.**	• **Hoima** • **Kamwenge**
Gold	❖ **For making ornaments, jewellery, trophies, medals.**	• **Kotido in Karamoja.** • **Mubende**
Limestone.	❖ **For making cement, for making lime.**	• **Hima in Kasese** • **Osukuru hills in Tororo**
Salt	❖ **For preserving food and human consumption.**	• **Lake Katwe**
Petroleum/ Crude oil	❖ **For making fuels e.g. petrol, diesel, oil, paraffin.**	• **Shores of lake Albert (Albertine region)**
Phosphates	❖ **For making artificial fertilizers.**	• **In Tororo**
Graphite	❖ **For making pencil leads.**	• **Kitgum in Acholi**

Other minrals mined in Uganda.

- ❖ **Soda ash**
- ❖ **Iron ore**
- ❖ **Tin**
- ❖ **Wolfram**
- ❖ **Asbestos**
- ❖ **Graphite.**
- ❖ **Gypsum**
- ❖ **Cobalt etc**

Note:

- ✓ ***Crude oil*** *was discovered in the Albertine region around the shores of lake Albert.*
- ✓ *An oil refinery is planned in* ***Kaiso-Tonya*** *in Hoima district. Oil will be transported to the coast by the planned* ***Hoima-Tanga crude oil pipeline****.*
- ✓ ***An oil refinery*** *is a place where crude oil is processed.*
- ✓ *In East Africa, oil is refined at Mombasa and Dar-es-salaam.*

Examples of oil wells in the Albertine region.

- *Kingfisher oil well on the shores of lake Albert.*
- *Ngege, Kigogole and Kasememe oil wells in Buliisa.*
- *Mputa, Nzizi and Ngasa oil wells in Kaiso-Tonya, Hoima.*
- *Jobi and Lyec oil wells in Nwoya district.*

How Ugandans will benefit from oil mining in the Albertine region.

- ➢ *Oil mining will create job opportunities to people.*
- ➢ *It will promote the development of roads.*
- ➢ *Ugandans will get oil products at a relatively cheaper cost.*
- ➢ *It will lead to development of towns.*
- ➢ *It will promote the development of roads in the region.*

Contributions of the Mining industry to Uganda's development.

- ❖ **It is a source of foreign exchange to the government.**
- ❖ **It is a source of employment opportunities to people.**
- ❖ **It has promoted the development of roads and railway lines.**
- ❖ **It leads to urbanisation.**
- ❖ **It is a source of raw materials for industries.**

Problems facing Uganda's Mining industry.

- ❖ **Shortage of capital.**
- ❖ **Low levels of technology.**
- ❖ **Shortage of skilled labour force.**

- ❖ Unreliable power supply.
- ❖ Mineral exhaustion in some areas.
- ❖ Competition from other sectors e.g. agriculture, fishing etc
- ❖ Poor transport network in different parts of Uganda.

Possible solutions to the problems facing the Mining industry in Uganda.

- ❖ By constructing better roads to the mining sites.
- ❖ By training more miners.
- ❖ The government should invest more money in the mining industry.
- ❖ By borrowing money from international institutions to invest in the mining industry.
- ❖ By giving tax benefits to foreign investors who invest in the mining industry.

Dangers caused by mining.

- ❖ It leads to pollution of the environment.
- ❖ It leads to displacement of people and animals.
- ❖ It leads to land degradation.
- ❖ It promotes soil erosion.
- ❖ It promotes devegetation.

ANIMAL RESOURCES.

Types of animals.

- Wild animals.
- Domestic animals.

(i) Domestic animals are animals kept at home.

Examples are;- rabbits, sheep, cattle, dogs, goats, camels, donkeys etc.

Importance of keeping domestic animals.

- ❖ They provide milk eg.cattle, camels, goats
- ❖ Some provide meat eg. Goats, camels, cattle.
- ❖ Some domestic animals provide security/ guard our homes eg.dogs.
- ❖ Some are used for ploughing our gardens eg.oxen
- ❖ Some are used for carrying goods eg.donkeys, camels,horses.
- ❖ Some provide hides and skins.
- ❖ Some domestic animals are used as pets at home.
- ❖ They are a source of income when sold.
- ❖ Some are used for paying brideprice eg cattle, goats.

Note: -***Pack animals*** *are animals which are used for transport.*

		
a camel	*a donkey*	*a horse*

(ii) Wild animals are animals that live on their own in their natural habitat.

Examples are;- snake, lion, zebra, elephant,kob, tiger etc.

Importance of wild animals.

- ❖ Some wild animals provide meat.
- ❖ Some wild animals provide hooves.
- ❖ Some wild animals provide materials used to make crafts.

- ❖ They are used for scientific research
- ❖ Some wild animals are used for cultural purposes.
- ❖ Wild animals attract tourists who bring in income.
- ❖ Some wild animals provide skins and hides.

Dangers of animals.

- ❖ They destroy farmers' crops.
- ❖ Wild animals like lions, tigers can attack and kill people.
- ❖ Some animals spread diseases to man.
- ❖ Some animals pollute water sources.

How people mistreat animals.

- ❖ By denying them food.
- ❖ By overloading pack animals.
- ❖ Through bestiality
- ❖ By denying them water.
- ❖ Through poaching.

Ways of caring for animals.

- ❖ By feeding animals.
- ❖ By treating sick animals.
- ❖ By giving them shelter.
- ❖ By cleaning their homes.

CLIMATE AS A RESOURCE.

WIND AS A RESOURCE.

- Wind is air in motion/ moving air.

Importance of wind.

- ❖ Wind helps in rain formation.
- ❖ Wind helps farmers in winnowing seeds.
- ❖ Winds helps in driving some boats.
- ❖ Wind can be turned into power by wind mills. Wind mills are mainly used in Karamoja to pump water and mill grains.
- ❖ Wind helps in flying kites and balloons.
- ❖ Wind helps our clothes to dry faster.
- ❖ Winds helps in pollution.
- ❖ Wind drives away bad smell.

Dangers of wind.

- ❖ Strong wind can blow off roofs of our houses.
- ❖ Wind causes soil erosion.
- ❖ Strong wind may force boats to capsize on lakes and rivers.
- ❖ Wind pollutes the atmosphere by raising dust.
- ❖ Wind drives away clouds that would bring rainfall.

RAINFALL AS A RESOURCE.

- Rain is the main source of water in the environment.

Types of rainfall.

- ❖ Convectional rainfall (received mostly around forests and large water bodies)
- ❖ Cyclonic rainfall/ Frontal rainfall (received mostly in plateau areas)
- ❖ Relief/Orographic rainfall (received mostly in highland areas)

Importance of rainfall.

- ❖ Rainfall provides water for domestic use.
- ❖ Rainfall helps plants to grow well.
- ❖ Rainfall reduces dust in the environment.
- ❖ Rainfall increases water volume in water bodies.
- ❖ Rainfall cools the environment.
- ❖ Rainfall softens the soil for easy cultivation.

Dangers of much rainfall.

- ❖ Much rainfall causes floods.
- ❖ Heavy rainfall causes landslides.
- ❖ It leads to soil erosion.
- ❖ It makes murram roads muddy and slippery.
- ❖ Heavy rainfall leads to destruction of property.
- ❖ Heavy rainfall destroys farmers' crops.

SUNSHINE AS A RESOURCE

- ✚ The sun is the main natural source of light in the environment.
- ✚ Uganda has receives abundant sunshine throughout the year.
- ✚ This sunshine is tapped and utilized by many people in Uganda in form of solar energy.

Importance of sunshine.

- ❖ It dries harvested crops.
- ❖ It provides light.
- ❖ It is a source of Vitamin D.
- ❖ It dries our clothes.
- ❖ It helps in generation of solar energy.

Solar energy projects in Uganda.

- ▪ Kabulasoke solar plant in Gomba.
- ▪ Soroti solar plant at Opuyo-Soroti.
- ▪ Tororo solar plant

Dangers of sunshine.

- ❖ Strong sunshine leads to drought.
- ❖ It dries up water bodies.
- ❖ It dries pasture for animals.
- ❖ It causes high temperatures in the environment.
- ❖ It causes dust in the envioronment.
- ❖ It dries crops in the garden before they are ready for harvesting.

HUMAN RESOURCE (MAN AS A RESOURCE)

Human resource refers to people who are important/ useful to others.

Types of humal labour.

Skilled labour.

- ✚ This refers to trained workers who provide labour to others.

Forexample;

- ❖ Teachers
- ❖ Bankers
- ❖ Pilots
- ❖ Doctors
- ❖ Nurses
- ❖ Tailors
- ❖ Engineers
- ❖ Mechanics

Unskilled labour

- **This refers to untrained workers who provide labour to other people.**

Forexample,

- **Hawkers**
- **Potters**
- **Market vendors**

Importance of people as a resource.

- **People provide services to other people eg.teachers, doctors etc**
- **People help in management of other resources.**
- **People provide market for goods and services.**
- **People provide labour on farms.**
- **People pay taxes to the government.**

Problems facing man as a resource.

- **Poor payment/ low salaries.**
- **Poor transport network.**
- **Poverty**
- **Accidents**
- **Illiteracy**
- **Bad weather**
- **Diseases**
- **Political instability.**

Ways of improving human resource.

- **By providing training to workers.**
- **By paying attractive salaries to workers.**
- **By building better health cenres in the country.**
- **By encouraging people to go to school to acquire skills.**
- **By building better transport routes in the country.**

Problems affecting utilisation of natural resources in Uganda.

- **Limited capital.**
- **Low levels of technology.**
- **Shortage of skilled labourforce.**
- **Insecurity in some parts of the country.**
- **Poor transport and communication.**
- **Some natural resources exist in scattered places.**

Ways people misuse natural resources.

- **Through over bush burning.**
- **Through over fishing.**
- **Through over grazing.**
- **Through over cultivation.**
- **Through swamp drainage.**
- **Through dumping wastes in water bodies.**
- **Through uncontrolled harvesting of swamp resources.**

Ways of protecting natural resources.

- **By encouraging people to plant more trees.**
- **By teaching farmers better farming methods.**
- **By teaching people the dangers of misusing the environment.**
- **By enforcing laws againt wastage of resources.**
- **By encouraging people to use other sources of energy.**



Testing Exercise.

1. Give the meaning of each of the following;
(i) A resource
(ii) Natural resources
2. Mention the two types of natural resources.
3. What are Non-renewable resources?
4. Mention any four examples of renewable resources in the environment.
5. Why is land regarded as the most important resource?
6. Mention any three examples of man-made resources in the environment.
7. Give any three ways people use land in your community.
8. Give any two wys people degrade land in the environment.
9. Which type of electricity is generated from fast flowing water?
10. State any two ways people misuse water bodies in their community.
11. Give any two ways one can care for a water source in his/ her community.
12. Name the largest fish species caught in Uganda's water bodies.
13. Mention any two modern fishing methods.
14. Give any three ways the fishing industry is important.
15. State any two problems facing the fishing industry in Uganda.
16. Give any two ways the water hyacinth affects the fishing industry in Uganda.
17. Give any two ways the fishing industry can be improved.
18. Mention any two types of minerals.
19. Mention any two methods of mining used in Uganda.
20. Which major mineral is mined from the Osukuru hills in Tororo district?
21. Mention the mineral that is used for making electric wires and coins?
22. Which mineral was discovered on the shores of lake Albert recently?
23. Name the mineral that is mainly used for making artificial fertilizers.
24. Mention any three oil wells found in the Albertine region.
25. Give any three ways Ugandans will benefit from the extraction of crude oil in the Albertine region.
26. State any two problems facing the mining industry in Uganda.
27. Give any two ways mining has promoted development in Uganda.
28. State any two economic values of keeping animals.
29. Give one way people can serve as resources.
30. Give any two ways wind promotes farming activities inan area.
31. State any two dangers caused by strong wind in the environment.
32. Mention the three types of rainfall.
33. How is the sun useful in the rain cycle?
34. Give any two ways sunshine acts as a resource.
35. State any two factors hindering effective resource utilisation in Uganda.

EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 5

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers



For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorised act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

***Author*:** **Kimbugwe Apollo**

Typing: **Kasozi Deo**

Ssevvume Willy

Kamya Imelda

Technical adviser: **Mary Flavia Namulindwa**

Cover design: **Excel Graphics**

Editing: **Excel Publishers Editorial Board**

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Five has been developed basing on the revised Primary Five Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organised, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Five in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the pupils.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts.

TEL: +256 771 623617  and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN UGANDA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TERM ONE

Topic 1: Location of Uganda on the map of East Africa.

Districts and Regions that form Uganda..... ...6
Maps and pictures..... 8
Locating Uganda using the grid reference system..... 12
Uganda's neighbours 16
Uganda as a land locked country..... 17

Topic 2: Physical Features of Uganda.

Introduction to Physical Features 20
Mountains in Uganda..... 20
The Rift Valley..... 26
Plateaus 27
Lakes in Uganda..... 27
Rivers in Uganda 32
The Influence of Physical Features 36

Topic 3: Climate of Uganda.

Weather 40
Climatic Zones of Uganda 42
Factors that Influence the Climate of Uganda 46
The Influence of Climate on Human Activities..... ...49
Farming in Uganda..... 50

Topic 4: Vegetation of Uganda.

Introduction to Vegetation 61
Vegetation Zones of Uganda ..... .62
Vegetation Distribution in Uganda 69
The Influence of Vegetation on Animals ..... .70
Game Parks in Uganda 71
Tourism industry in Uganda 74
Vegetation Conservation 75
Relationship between vegetation and population distribution..... 76

Topic 5: Natural resources of Uganda.

Introduction to natural resources..... 79
Land as a resource..... 79
Water resources 80
Minerals as a resource 82
Animal resources 84
Climate (wind, rainfall, sunshine) as a resource 85
Human resource 86

TERM TWO

Topic 6: The People of Pre-colonial Uganda.

Origin of the People of Uganda 89

Major Ethnic Groups in Uganda..... ..92
Migration of people today 99
Settlement patterns of the people of Uganda.....104
Political, Social and Economic Organisation among The People of Uganda.....105

Topic 7. Foreign Influence in Uganda.

Early Foreign Traders in Uganda 118
European Explorers in Uganda 123
Christian missionaries in Uganda 127
Colonial administrators in Uganda 135

Topic 8. How Uganda became a Nation.

Colonial agreements that were signed in Uganda.....143
Evolution of Uganda's boundaries 145
Colonial administrative systems used in Uganda 146

Topic 9. The Road to independence in Uganda.

Characteristics of colonial rule 149
Colonial resisters in Uganda 150
Formation of the LEGCO in Uganda 151
The struggle for independence in Uganda 152
Formation of political parties in Uganda 153
The influence of world wars on Uganda's independence 154
Uganda gains her independence 156

TERM THREE

Topic 10. Uganda as an independent nation.

Presidents of Uganda since independence.....159
Symbols of an independent nation 162
Democracy in Uganda 166
Elections 167

Topic 11: The Government of Uganda.

Levels of government in Uganda 174
Organs of the government 174
The National constitution 180
Sources of government revenue 182
Budgeting 184
Rights and responsibilities of citizens 187

Topic 12. Population size and Distribution

Introduction to population 194
Population growth 194
Population census 195
Population distribution 196
Population density 199
Effects of HIV/ AIDS on population 201

TOPIC 6: THE PEOPLE OF PRE-COLONIAL UGANDA.

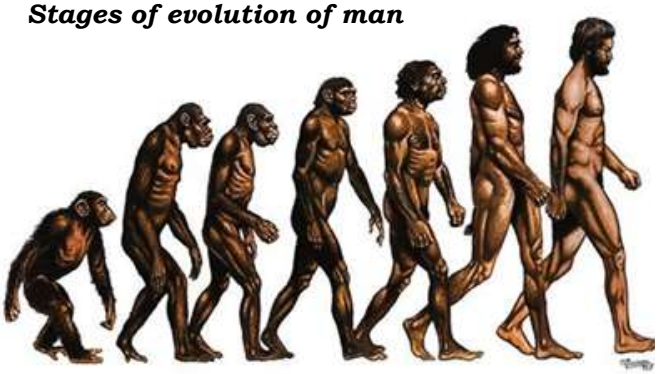
- Pre means before.
- Therefore, Pre-colonial Uganda is a period of time before Uganda was under the control of the colonialists.
- Colonialism is a state where a nation or a country is under the control of a more powerful state.

ORIGIN OF THE PEOPLE OF UGANDA

STONE AGE

- Stone age was the time when man used stones to make his tools.
- The stone age period was called so because early man made his tools out of stones.
- Man was called the stone age man because man made his tools out of stones.

Stages of evolution of man

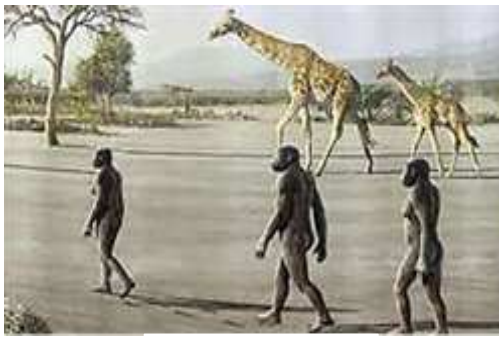


Stages of stone age

- The Old stone age/ Early stone age/ Palaeolithic
- The Middle stone age/ Mesolithic
- The New/Late stone age/Neolithic

THE OLD STONE AGE

- It was the first stage of stone age.
- It is also called the Early stone age.

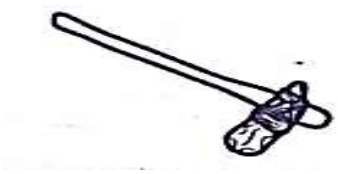


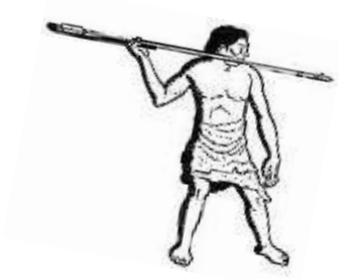
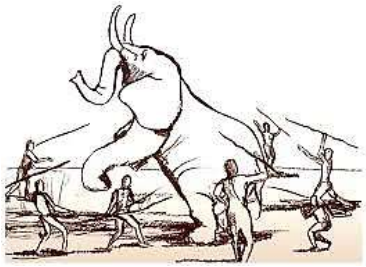
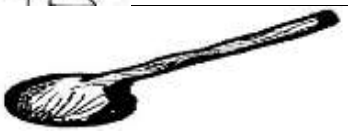
Old stone age man

Characteristics of Old stone age

- Early man had a hairy body.
- Man used to eat raw meat.
- Man lived a wild and unsettled way of life./
- Man had no permanent homes.
- Man used simple tools made out of stones.
- Man slept under big trees and stones.

Tools used by early man in the Old stage age.

Name of the tool	*Drawing*	*Use of the tool to early man*
Bolas		❖ It was used to trap fast running animals during hunting
Hand axe		❖ It was used for skinning animals.

Hand spears		❖ It was used for hunting 
Bone needle		❖ It was used for stitching animal skins and hides to make clothes
Cleaver		❖ It was used for chopping meat
Wooden club		❖ It was used for killing trapped animals
Bow and arrow		❖ It was used for hunting and fishing

Examples of early man's food.

- ❖ Raw meat
- ❖ Insects
- ❖ Fish
- ❖ Wild honey
- ❖ Plant roots
- ❖ Fruit
- ❖ Barks of trees

Ways early man obtained food.

- ❖ By hunting.
- ❖ By fishing.
- ❖ By gathering wild berries (fruit).
- ❖ Collecting wild honey.

Places where early man used to live.

- ❖ Caves
- ❖ Along river banks
- ❖ Under big trees.
- ❖ On lake shores

Note:-*The discovery of fire* *marked the end of Old stone age and marked the beginning of Middle age.*

MIDDLE STONE AGE

- This was the second stone age of early man's development.
- It is also called the Mesolithic period.
- The discovery of fire marked the beginning of the Middle stone age.

Characteristics of man in the Middle stone age.

- Man started living in caves.
- Man started eating roasted meat.
- Man started hunting using traps.
- Man started using animal skins as blankets.
- Man tamed the first animal (a dog).
- Man had less hairy body than in old stone age.

How early man discovered fire.

- He rubbed a dry stick into a hole in a dry piece of wood.
- As a result of friction, fire was produced.

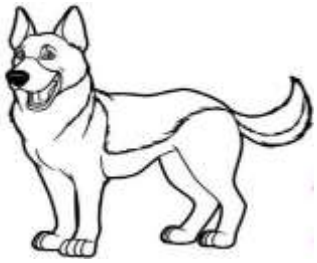


How fire was important to early man.

- It was used for roasting meat.
- It was used to boil poison.
- It was used for hardening his tools. eg.pots
- It provided light in caves.
- It provided warmth to early man in caves.
- It was for protection (scaring away wild animals).

Ways how fire helped man to live in caves.

- It provided light in caves.
- It provided warmth in caves.
- It scared away wild animals.



Importance of a dog to early man.

- It helped early man during hunting.
- It protected early man from wild animals.

Note: ***The discovery of farming*** *marked the end of Middle stone age and marked the beginning of New stone age period.*

THE NEW STONE AGE.

- This stone age is also referred to as the Late stone age/ Neolithic.
- Man started it with the discovery of farming.

Characteristics of man in the New stone age.

- Man started to live in small organised communities.
- Man started growing crops (this made man to start living a settled life).
- Man tamed many domestic animals.
- Man started living in simple huts.

Note: ***The discovery of Iron smelting*** *marked the end of Stone age and the beginning of Iron age.*

Ways farming helped early man to live a settled life.

- Man had enough food for eating.
- Man needed to settle and take care of his crops and animals.

IRON AGE.

- This is a period when early man started using tools made of iron.
- Black smithing is the act of making iron tools.

- A black smith is a person who shapes and repairs iron tools.
- Iron smelting was started by the Cushites/ Hamites at Meroe in Ethiopia and was introduced in Uganda by the Bachwezi.

Examples of iron tools that were made and used by early man.

- ❖ Panga
- ❖ Saucepans
- ❖ Arrows
- ❖ Hoe
- ❖ Spear
- ❖ Knife

				
a panga	***a knife***	***a sickle***	***a spear***	***a gun***

How the discovery of iron smelting improved early man's life.

- ❖ Man was able to make better tools for farming.
- ❖ Man was able to make better tools for hunting.
- ❖ Man made strong weapons for protection.
- ❖ Man has made better means of transport.
- ❖ Man made better fishing tools.

ETHNIC GROUPS IN UGANDA.

- An ethnic group is a large group of people with the same origin, same major occupation and almost the speak the same language.

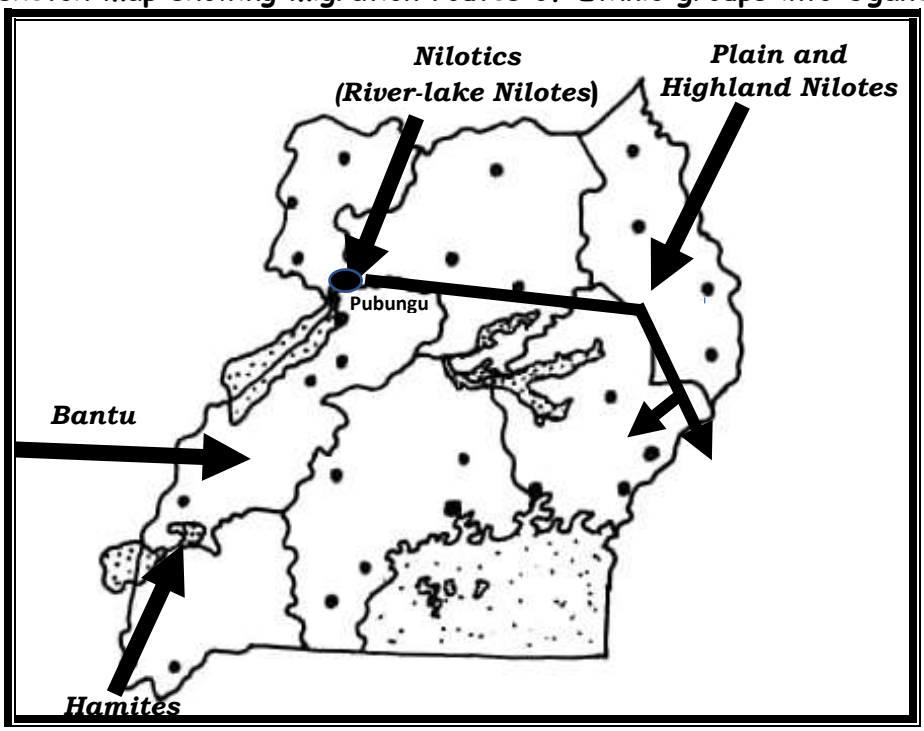
Characteristics of Ethnic groups.

- People have the same origin.
- People have the same major/ traditional occupation.
- People speak almost the same language.
- People may have the social and political organisation.

Examples of Ethnic groups in Uganda and their origin.

Ethnic group	*Origin*	*Traditional occupation*
❖ Bantu	❖ Cameroon highlands	❖ Crop growing/ cultivation
❖ Nilotics/River-Lake Nilotes	❖ Bahr-el-Ghazal	❖ Pastoralism/ animal rearing
❖ Hamites/Cushites	❖ Ethiopia	❖ Pastoralism
❖ Plain Nilotes/Nilo-Hamites	❖ Ethiopian Highlands	❖ Pastoralism
❖ Highland Nilotes	❖ Ethiopian Highlands	❖ pastoralism
❖ The Sudanic	❖ Juba in South Sudan	❖ Mixed farming

A sketch map showing migration routes of Ethnic groups into Uganda.



THE BANTU.

- **The Bantu was the first Ethnic group to come to Uganda.**
- **The cradle land of the Bantu was Cameroon highlands.**
- **The Bantu are called so because they speak related languages with the suffix "ntu" meaning people, something or things.**
- **The major occupation of the Bantu is cultivation.**
- **The Bantu is the largest Ethnic group in Uganda while Baganda is the largest tribe.**
- **The Bantu settled in the interlacustrine region when they entered into Uganda.**
- **Interlacustrine region refers to the land or area between the great lakes of East Africa.ie. Lake Victoria, Lake Albert, Lake Kivu, Lake Tanganyika and Lake Edward.**

Reasons why the Bantu settled in the interlacustrine region.

The region had fertile soils for crop growing.

The region had received reliable rainfall which supported crop growing.

Note.

- ✓ ***A tribe*** *is a large group of people who have the same origin and speak the same language.*
- ✓ *The interlacustrine region was originally inhabited by the* ***Bushmen.***
- ✓ *The migration of the Bantu into Uganda led to the displacement of the Bushmen.*
- ✓ *The Bushmen moved southwards and finally settled in the Kalahari desert in Southern Africa.*

Bantu tribes in Uganda.

- **Banyoro**
- **Basoga.**
- **Baganda**
- **Bakiga**
- **Banyankole**
- **Bagishu**
- **Bakonzo**
- **Bagwere**
- **Bafumbira**
- **Batooro**

Bantu tribes that settled on slopes of mountains in East Africa.

Mountain	*Bantu tribe*
❖ Mountain Rwenzori	❖ Bakonzo
❖ Mountain Mufumbiro	❖ Bafumbira , Bakiga
❖ Mountain Elgon	❖ Bagishu

Causes of the Bantu migrations.

- ❖ Outbreak of epidemic diseases in their cradleland.
- ❖ Internal and external conflicts.
- ❖ The need for fertile land for cultivation.
- ❖ Outbreak of famine.
- ❖ Shortage of land.
- ❖ Over population in their cradle land.
- ❖ Prolonged drought.

Reasons for the migrations of the Bantu into Uganda.

- ❖ They were looking for water and pasture for their animals.
- ❖ They were escaping from external attacks.
- ❖ They were escaping from epidemic diseases which attacked them.
- ❖ To look for areas that received reliable rainfall. .
- ❖ To look for enough land to carry out crop growing.
- ❖ To look for fertile soils for crop cultivation.

Effects of Bantu migrations into Uganda.

a) **Positive effects.**

- ❖ They introduced new crops.
- ❖ They introduced new systems of farming.
- ❖ They introduced new languages.
- ❖ They introduced new cultures.
- ❖ They formed kingdoms and chiefdoms in Uganda.

b) **Negative effects.**

- ❖ They displaced people where they settled ie. The Bushmen.
- ❖ Population decreased where they left.
- ❖ Their intermarriages led to loss of culture of the early inhabitants.
- ❖ Population increased in areas where they settled.
- ❖ They caused wars and conflicts in areas where they settled.

THE NILOTES.

- The Nilotes are called so because they had their origin along the Nile valley.
- Examples of Nile valley countries include; Uganda, South Sudan, Sudan, Ethiopia, Egypt etc.
- The Nilotes are divided into three sub groups

Namely;

- The River-Lake Nilotes/ Nilotics
- The Highland Nilotes.
- The Plain Nilotes/Nilo-Hamites.

THE RIVER- LAKE NILOTES.

- They are also called the Nilotics/Luo speakers.
- They are called Luo speakers because they speak Luo as their language.
- They migrated from Bahr-el -Ghazal in South Sudan.
- The Nilotics are sometimes referred to as River-Lake Nilotes because they settled near lakes and rivers.
- The Nilotics entered into Uganda from the North.
- The Nilotics first settled at Pubungu when they entered into Uganda.
- Pubungu currently is known as Pakwach.
- The Nilotics were led by Olum and his two sons Gipir and Labongo.
- The two brothers separated at Pubungu due to misunderstandings over the spear and the bead.

The Legend of The Spear and the Bead.

Refer to Excel Standard Social Studies pupil's book 4.

Lessons learnt from the Legend of the Spear and the Bead.

- ***We should forgive those who hurt us.***
- ***Refusing to forgive can cause suffering and death.***
- ***Permanent separation can occur as a result of unforgiveness.***
- ***We should not be quarrelsome.***
- ***We should always seek permission before using someone's property.***

The Separation of the River-Lake Nilotes.

- ✓ The first group led by Gipir settled in the West Nile. They intermarried with the Lendu leading to the rise of the Alur tribe.
- ✓ The second group moved to areas North of lake Kyoga and settled there and these form the Acholi tribe.
- ✓ Another group moved southwards to Bunyoro. They were led by Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga. They intermarried with the Babiito clan and formed the Luo- Babiito dynasty.
- ✓ The last group moved eastwards, they formed the Jopadhola tribe in Tororo district.
- ✓ Another group continued to Western Kenya forming the Jaluo tribe.

Tribes under the River-Lake Nilotes in Uganda.

- Acholi (the largest tribe under the Nilotics).
- Alur
- Jopadhola

Districts occupied by the River-Lake Nilotes in Uganda.

- Gulu
- Amuru
- Omoro
- Kitgum
- Pakwach
- Agago
- Pader
- Nwoya

Effects of the migration of the Nilotes.

a) **Positive effects.**

- ❖ They introduced Luo language where they settled.
- ❖ The number of domestic animals increased in East Africa.
- ❖ They formed chiefdoms where they settled.

- They introduced new crops such as millet, sorghum, and sweet potatoes in East Africa.
- They founded the Luo-Biito dynasty.
- They introduced new culture like pet names and luo languages.

b) Negative effects.

- They displaced people where they settled.
- The Luo invasion led to collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara empire.
- Population increased where they settled which resulted into shortage of land.

THE PLAIN NILOTES/ NILO-HAMITES.

- They originated from the Ethiopian highlands.
- They were originally called the Nilo-Hamites because of a mixture of culture with the Cushites (Hamites).
- They settled in plains hence the source of their name.
- Their traditional occupation is pastoralism.
- They entered Uganda through the North East.
- They mainly settled in the North Eastern part of Uganda.

Districts occupied by the Plain Nilotes in Uganda.

▪ Nakapiripirit	▪ Kumi	▪ Otuke	▪ Kole
▪ Moroto	▪ Abim	▪ Alebtong	▪ Dokolo
▪ Soroti	▪ Kaabong	▪ Lira	▪ Apac
▪ Katakwi	▪ Amolatar	▪ Oyam	▪ Amuria Etc.

Reasons why the Plain Nilotes settled in plain areas.

- The areas were large without people.
- The areas were free from vectors like tsetse flies.
- The areas were free from tsetse flies.

Tribes under the Plain Nilotes in Uganda.

- Karimojong
- Langi
- Iteso
- Jie
- Kumam

Reasons why some tribes of the plain Nilotes changed to mixed farming.

- They had settled in areas with fertile soils good for growing.
- The areas where they settled received reliable rainfall.
- They were influenced by the Bantu cultivators who were their neighbours.

THE HIGHLAND NILOTES.

- They were originally pastoralists.
- They are called the Highland nilotes because they settled in highland areas.
- They originated from Ethiopian highlands and they settled around Mountain Elgon.

Tribes under the Highland Nilotes in Uganda.

- Sabiny /also known as the Sebei (on the slopes of mountain Elgon in both Uganda and Kenya).
- Pokot

Districts occupied by the Highland Nilotes.

- Kapchorwa
- Bukwo
- Kween etc.

Cause of the migrations of the Nilotes into Uganda.

- Shortage of pasture for animals.
- Internal and external attacks.
- Outbreak of epidemic diseases.
- High population which led to shortage of land.
- Prolonged drought in their cradle land.
- Outbreak of famine in their cradle land.

Reasons for the migrations of the Nilotes into Uganda.

- They were looking for water and pasture for their animals.
- They were escaping from external attacks.
- Over population in their cradle land.
- They were escaping from epidemic diseases which attacked them.
- To look for enough land to carryout pastoralism..
- Outbreak of animal diseases.

HAMITES / CUSHITES.

- The Hamites are also called Cushites.
- The Hamites form the smallest ethnic group in Uganda.
- They are mainly pastoralists.
- The Hamites originated from Asia and settled in the Horn of Africa.
- The Hamites who came to Uganda mainly came from Ethiopia.
- They are believed to have entered Uganda from the South Western direction through the present day Rwanda.

Countries found in the Horn of Africa.

- Somalia.
- Ethiopia.
- Eritrea.
- Djibouti.

Tribes under Hamites.

- Bahima.
- Tutsi.
- Bahinda.

Reasons for the migration of the Hamites.

- Shortage of land in their cradle land.
- They were looking for water and pasture for animals.
- They were looking for areas which are free from epidemic diseases..
- To escape from internal conflicts.
- Some were running away from natural disasters eg. floods and drought.

Effects of the migration of the Hamites.

- It led to loss of culture through intermarriages.
- It led to introduction of new languages.
- The number of domestic animals increased in Uganda.
- Population increased in East Africa.

THE SUDANIC PEOPLE.

- Sudanic people are a group of people who came from South Eastern Sudan.
- They are called the Sudanic because they came into Uganda from Sudan.
- It is believed that their origin started in Juba.
- They are mainly found in West Nile sub-region of Uganda.

- They are crop cultivators and pastoralists.

Sudanic tribes in Uganda.

- Lugbara.
- Okebu
- Madi.
- Lendu.

Reasons why the Sudanic people migrated.

- ❖ They were running away from civil wars.
- ❖ Outbreak of famine.
- ❖ They were searching for fertile land for crop growing.

Problems faced by early migrants.

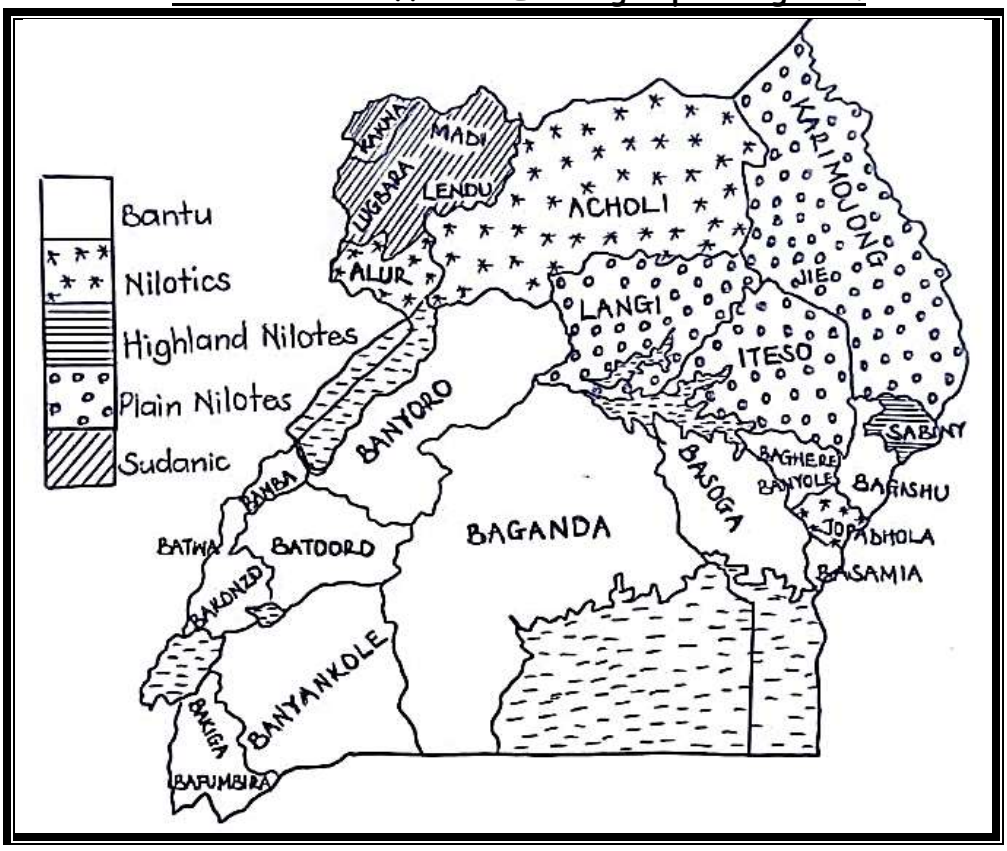
- ❖ Attacks from hostile people.
- ❖ They were attacked by tropical diseases.
- ❖ They were attacked by fierce wild animals.
- ❖ Shortage of food and water.
- ❖ Difficulty in crossing some physical features such as rivers.

How occupation influenced the settlement of the ethnic groups in Uganda.

- ➢ *The settlement of the pre-colonial people was influenced by the occupation they carried out. forexample;*

- ✓ The Bantu cultivators chose to settle in areas around the great lakes where the soils are fertile and rainfall was reliable.
- ✓ The River-lake Nilotes were pastoralists which made them to settle in areas that had plenty of pasture for animals.
- ✓ The Plain Nilotes (Nilo-Hamites) chose to settle in open grasslands which were suitable for grazing livestock.
- ✓ The Hamites were pastoralists which made them to settle in areas with large grazing land with plenty of pasture.

Tribes under different Ethnic groups in Uganda.



MIGRATION OF PEOPLE TODAY.

- Migration is the movement of people with their property from one place to another looking for better settlement.
- A migrant is a person who moves with his/ her property from one place to another looking for better settlement.

Types of migration.

- Internal migration.
- External migration.

EXTERNAL MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one country to another looking for better settlement.
- With external migration, a migrant moves from one country to another.

Forms of external migration.

- Emigration.
- Immigration.
  - ✓ Emigration is the process by which a person leaves his/ her own country and goes to live permanently in another country.
  - ✓ An emigrant is a person who leaves his/her own country and goes to live permanently in another country.
  - ✓ Immigration is the process by which a person comes to live permanently in a country that is not his/ hers.
  - ✓ An immigrant is a person who comes to live permanently in a country which is not his/hers.

Causes of immigration and emigration.

- Civil wars/ internal conflicts.
- Shortage of land.
- Need for better social services.
- Marriage bondage.
- Unemployment.
- To invest their excess capital.
- Job transfers.

Effects of immigration and emigration.

- It leads to population increase in areas of settlement.
- It leads to introduction of new languages.
- It leads to intermarriages among people.
- It leads to land shortage in areas of settlement.
- It leads to introduction of new culture in other countries..
- It leads to large labour force in new areas of settlement.

Reasons why people leave their own countries to settle in others permanently.

- To look for better paying jobs.
- To look for areas that are free from wars.
- To look for enough land.
- To look for better social services.
- To look for trade opportunities.

INTERNAL MIGRATION.

- Internal migration is the movement of people with their property from one part of a country to another for better settlement.
- The migrant remains within his own country.

Forms of internal migration.

- **Rural-urban migration.**
- **Urban-rural migration.**
- **Rural-rural migration.**
- **Urban-urban migration.**

RURAL-URBAN MIGRATION.

- **This is the movement of people with their property from villages to towns looking for better settlement.**





Village → *Town*

Causes of Rural-Urban migration.

- **Unemployment in villages.**
- **Poor health services.**
- **Poor transport systems in villages.**
- **Poor education services in villages**
- **Job transfers.**
- **Internal conflicts.**
- **Insecurity in villages.**

Reasons why people move from villages to towns.

- **To look for better paying jobs.**
- **To look for better education services.**
- **To look for a large market for their goods.**
- **To get access to social amenities like electricity and piped water.**
- **To look for better health services.**
- **To look for a wider market for their goods.**
- **To run away from dangerous cultural practices.**

Effects of Rural-Urban migration.

- **It leads to depopulation in rural areas.**
- **It leads to shortage of labour in villages.**
- **It leads to low food production.**
- **It leads to high crime rate in towns.**
- **It leads to unemployment in urban areas.**

URBAN-RURAL MIGRATION.

- **Urban-rural migration is the movement of people with their property from towns to villages looking for better settlement.**



Causes of urban-rural migration.

- **Insecurity in towns.**
- **High costs of living in towns.**
- **Retirement from jobs in towns.**
- **Outbreak of epidemic diseases in towns.**
- **Job transfers.**
- **Need for large vacant land for crop growing.**
- **Unemployment in towns.**

Reasons why people move from towns to villages.

- **To look for land for farming.**
- **To extend their businesses to villages.**
- **To get market for their goods.**
- **To look for areas which are free from natural disasters.**
- **To look for areas with low costs of living.**

Effects of Urban-Rural migration.

- **It leads to shortage of labour in towns.**
- **It leads to shortage of market for goods in towns.**
- **It leads to land shortage in villages.**
- **It leads to population increase in villages.**

Ways the government can encourage Urban-Rural migration.

- **By extending electricity to rural areas (Rural electrification)**
- **By setting up small scale industries in villages.**
- **By building better hospitals in villages.**
- **By constructing better schools in villages.**
- **By providing better security in villages.**

URBAN-URBAN MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one town to another looking for better settlement.





Town → *Town*

Causes of Urban-Urban migration.

- Job transfers.
- Low market for goods.
- Insecurity in some towns.
- High costs of living in some towns.
- Poor sanitation in some towns.
- Natural disasters in some towns eg.floods.

Reasons why people move from one town to another.

- To look for better jobs.
- To look for a large market for their goods.
- To look for better security services.
- To look for towns which are free from natural disasters.

Effects of Urban-Urban migration.

- It leads to population increase in areas they settle in.
- It leads to shortage of market where they have left.
- It leads to shortage of labour where they have left.
- It leads to shortage of land in the new areas of settlement.

RURAL-RURAL MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one village to another looking for better settlement.





Village → *Village*

Causes of Rural-Rural migration.

- Social conflicts.
- Soil infertility in some villages.
- Insecurity in some villages.
- Shortage of water and pasture.
- Shortage of land.
- Outbreak of epidemic diseases.

Reasons why people move from one village to another.

- To look for fertile soils for crop growing.
- To look for water and pasture for animals.
- To run away from social conflicts.
- To look for areas with better security.
- To look for areas which are free from epidemic diseases.
- To look for areas which are free from natural disasters.

Effects of Rural-Rural migration.

- It leads to conflicts with the inhabitants of the places they migrate to.
- It leads to intermarriages.
- It leads to introduction of new cultures.
- It leads to low population in places where people migrate from.
- It leads to introduction of new languages where people settle.

How do people in Urban areas benefit from those living in Rural areas.

- Urban people get food from villages.
- People in villages provide market for goods produced in towns.
- Industries in towns get raw materials from villages.

Problems faced by people living in urban areas/ towns.

- Congestion of people in towns.
- High crime rate.
- Sound pollution.
- Development of slums.
- High cost of living.
- Traffic jam.
- Unemployment among people.

Possible solutions to the above problems.

- Deploying more security officers to improve security.
- By building storeyed houses.
- By constructing wider roads in towns.
- By building flyovers and foot paths.
- By teaching people the dangers of poor sanitation.
- By installing/putting security cameras on houses and along the roads.

Ways people in Rural areas benefit from people in Urban areas.

- People in towns provide market for food from villages.
- They provide rural areas with goods produced in towns.
- People in towns provide farm inputs to farmers in villages eg.insecticides, fertilizers

Problems faced by people in rural areas.

- Poor health services.
- Poor transport system.
- Low electric power supply.
- Shortage of safe water.
- Poor education services.
- Poor housing facilities.

Possible solutions to the problems faced by people in rural areas.

- By constructing better roads in rural areas.
- By starting up small scale industries.
- By extending electricity to rural areas.

- By setting up better health centres in villages.
- By building better schools in rural areas.

SETTLEMENT PATTERNS OF THE PEOPLE OF UGANDA.

- Settlement pattern is the distribution of people in an area.
- The settlement patterns in Uganda vary from one area to another.
- Some areas of Uganda have houses built close to one another, some have scattered houses while others have houses that were built following a line.

Types of settlement patterns.

(i) Linear settlement pattern

- ✓ Houses are built along a line eg.besides a major road, railway line.

  Factors that lead to linear settlement pattern.
  - Presence of a transport line eg. a road, railway etc
  - Presence of a river to provide water.
  - Presence of a coast line which has a fishing ground.

(ii) Nucleated settlement pattern/ Clustered settlement pattern

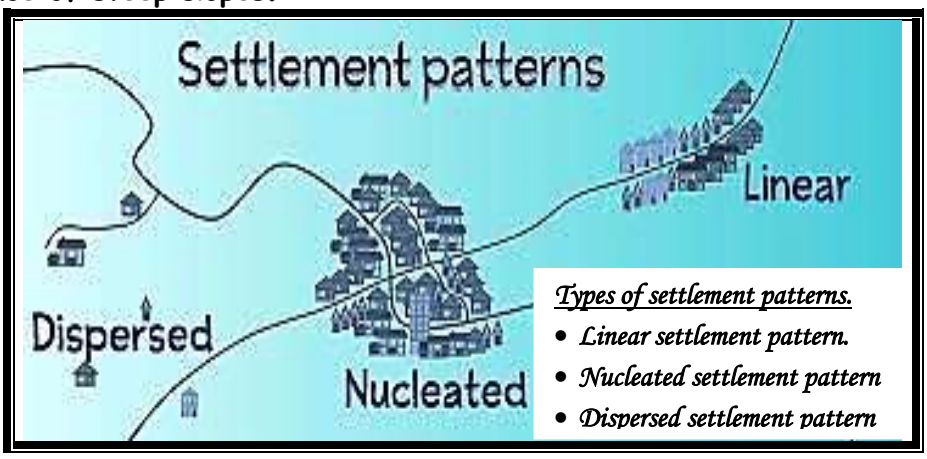
- ✓ Houses are built close to one another.
- ✓ It is common in areas where people own small pieces of land eg. in urban areas, housing estates and accommodation for workers.

  Factors for a Nucleated settlement pattern.
  - Presence of better social services eg. health service, education service etc.
  - Shortage of land in an area.
  - Presence of fertile soils in an area.
  - Presence of natural resources eg. minerals
  - Improved peace and security.

(iii) Dispersed settlement pattern/ Scattered settlement pattern.

- ✓ Houses are scattered over a very large area.
- ✓ It is common in areas where people own big pieces of land eg. in rural areas.

  Factors that lead to a Dispersed settlement pattern.
  - Presence of large land.
  - Poor infertile soils.
  - Presence of pests and diseases.
  - Presence of disease vectors.
  - Presence of steep slopes.



POLITICAL ORGANISATION OF THE PEOPLE OF THE PRE-COLONIAL UGANDA.

- Political organisation refers to the way people governed themselves.
- Political units during the pre-colonial Uganda included;-
  - Empires.
  - Kingdoms.
  - Chiefdoms.
  - Principalities.

BUNYORO-KITARA EMPIRE.

- This was the earliest kingdom to be formed in Uganda. It was called an empire because it was too large, covering a large area.
- The founders (first occupants) of Bunyoro-Kitara empire were the Batembuzi.
- It was founded by Ruhanga and his brother Nkya.
- The Batembuzi formed a ruling dynasty called the Tembuzi dynasty.
- The Batembuzi were believed to be demi-gods because they could perfom miracles.
- Isaza was the last ruler of the Batembuzi.
- The Tembuzi dynasty came to an end after king Isaza was locked underground by the underground king Nyamiyonga.
- The Batembuzi were succeeded by the Bachwezi.

The Chwezi dynasty.

- It was formed by the Bachwezi.
- The Bachwezi are believed to have originated from Ethiopia into Uganda.
- Ndahura was the first king of the Bachwezi.
- Ndahura founded the Chwezi dynasty.
- Wamala was the last king of the Bachwezi.

Note:-***A dynasty*** *is a series of leaders who belong to the same family.*

Contributions of the Bachwezi in Uganda.

a) Political contributions.

- The Bachwezi introduced a centralised monarchy.
- The Bachwezi introduced the idea of building reed palaces.
- The Bachwezi introduced royal regalia.

b) Social contributions.

- They introduced local chess (mweso game).
- They introduced the building of grass-thatched houses.
- They introduced the digging of ditches for protection against enemies.

c) Economic contributions.

- They started salt mining at lake Katwe.
- They introduced the knowledge of iron smelting.
- They introduced long-horned cattle in Uganda.
- The introduced coffee growing.



Long horned cattle introduced by the Bachwezi

- They introduced bark cloth making.

Ways iron smelting strengthened the Chwezi empire.

- The Bachwezi started making strong tools for cultivation.
- The Bachwezi made strong weapons for defence and expansion.

Reasons/ causes for the collapse of the Chwezi dynasty.

- The empire was too large to be controlled by one ruler.
- Death of their beloved cow (Bihogo).
- Outbreak of drought and famine in the empire.
- Disunity among the people.
- Outbreak of epidemic diseases in the empire.
- Rebellions by distant princes.
- The Luo invasion. This led to the final collapse of the Chwezi dynasty.

Note:

- ✓ ***Luo-Babiito dynasty*** *replaced the Chwezi dynasty. This was founded by Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga.*
- ✓ ***Bunyoro kingdom*** *replaced Bunyoro-Kitara empire and* ***Isingoma Mpuga Rukidi*** *was the first omukama of Bunyoro.*

Examples of kingdoms that were formed after the collapse of Bunyoro kitara empire.

- Buganda kingdom
- Bunyoro kingdom
- Ankole kingdom
- Wanga kingdom in Kenya
- Karagwe kingdom in Tanzania.
- Tooro kingdom

EARLY KINGDOMS IN UGANDA.

- **A kingdom** is an area ruled by a kind/queen.
- Kingdoms in Uganda were formed in the interlacustrine region.

Tribes that formed kingdoms in Uganda

Tribe	*Kingdom*	*Title of the leader*
Banyankole	Ankole	Omugabe
Baganda	Buganda	Kabaka
Batooro	Tooro	Omukama
Banyoro	Bunyoro	Omukama
Bakonzo	Rwenzururu	Omusinga

Reasons why some of the Bantu tribes were able to form kingdoms.

- They lived a settled life.
- They were united.
- They were organised.

Reasons why some tribes were unable to form kingdoms.

- They never lived in settled life.
- They were disunited.

Characteristics of kingdoms.

- They have hereditary rulers.
- They have established social and cultural institutions.
- They have a single supreme king at a time.
- The kings have obsolute powers over their subjects.
- They have royal regalias as instruments of authority.

Examples of Royal regalia.

- **The royal crown.**
- **The royal stool.**
- **The royal spear.**
- **The royal drum.**

Note:-Royal regalia *are symbols and emblems of a kingdom.*

Advantages/importance of kingdoms.

- **They promote unity among people.**
- **They promote culture of the society.**
- **They easily mobilise people for national duties e.g. elections.**
- **They promote morals among the people.**
- **They offer scholarships to students.**

Disadvantanges of kingdoms.

- **They promote dictatorship.**
- **They promote the interests of the minority over the majority.**
- **They promote regional rather than national development.**
- **There is unequal distribution of wealth among the people.**
- **They promote tribalism.**

LOCATION OF THE ANCIENT AND CURRENT KINGDOMS IN UGANDA.



BUGANDA KINGDOM.

- **There are two traditions that explain the founder of Buganda kingdom.**
- **According to the Banyoro (Nyoro tradition), Kato Kimera is believed to be the founder of Buganda kingdom. Kato Kimera was the twin brother to Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga the founder of Bunyoro kingdom.**
- **According to the Baganda (Ganda tradition), Kintu is believed to be the founder of Buganda kingdom and this is explained by the Legend of the first Muganda.**
- **Buganda kingdom is located in the North West of lake Victoria and currently occupies districts like Kampala, Mukono, Mpigi,Luwero, Mityana, Masaka, Bukomansimbi, Kalungu, Mubende, Nakaseke Wakiso,etc.**

- The title given to the king of Buganda is <u>kabaka</u>. The king in Buganda had obsolute powers over his subjects.
- Buganda kingdom grew stronger and expanded in the 18th century.

<u>The Legend of The First Muganda.</u>

- Excel Standard Social Studies Pupil's book 4

<u>Lessons learnt from the Legend of Kintu (first Muganda).</u>

- Forgetfulness is bad and it can lead to death.
- Poverty can not stop success.
- We learn to be kind to others.
- Determination leads to success.
- Cruelity leads to hatred.
- We should have faith and hope.
- Never to turn back after making a decision.



Kabaka Ronald Muwenda Mutebi II

<u>Factors for the expansion and growth of Buganda kingdom</u>.

- Buganda had strong and able leaders.
- Buganda had a strong standing army.
- Unity among the people of Buganda.
- Buganda was strategically located near Lake Victoria. This helped to safeguard Buganda against her enemies.
- Buganda had plenty of food for the growing population.
- Buganda acquired guns from the Arabs. These were used in the expansion of the kingdom.
- Buganda kingdom had fertile soils which increased food production.

<u>Famous kings of Buganda and what they are remembered for</u>.

			
Kabaka Muteesa I	*Kabaka Mwanga*	*Daudi Chwa*	*Sir Edward Muteesa II*

King (kabaka)	*What he is known for.*
Kabaka Ssuuna II	❖ He welcomed the first Arab traders to Buganda kingdom.
Kabaka Muteesa I	❖ He invited Christian missionaries to Uganda through Henry Morton Stanley. ❖ He welcomed the first christian missionaries to Uganda.
Kabaka Mwanga	❖ He ordered for the killing of the Christian converts in Buganda. ❖ He was exiled to Seychelles islands where he died.

Kabaka Daudi Chwa	❖ He was an infant king of Buganda during the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement. ❖ He ruled Buganda kingdom with the help of the regents.
Kabaka Edward Muteesa II	❖ He rejected the proposed idea of forming the East African federation. ❖ He was exiled to Britain by sir Andrew Cohen in 1953.
Kabaka Ronald Muwenda Mutebi II	❖ He is the current king of Buganda.

How the kabaka was important to Buganda kingdom.

- ❖ He was the commander in chief of the army.
- ❖ He was the chief decision maker.
- ❖ He was the chief judge

BUNYORO KINGDOM.

- Bunyoro kingdom started after the collapse of the Chwezi empire.
- The kingdom was founded by the Luo migrants from Northern Uganda.
- Bunyoro kingdom was founded by **Isingoma Rukidi Mpuga** under the Luo-Babiito dynasty.
- The title given to the king of Bunyoro is **omukama.**
- Bunyoro grew and expanded during the reign of omukama Kamurasi. After his death, his son called Kabalega succeeded him as a new king.
- Currently Bunyoro kingdom covers districts like Kibale, Masindi, Buliisa, Kiryandongo, Hoima etc.
- The current king of Bunyoro kingdom is **Solomon Gafabusa Iguru**
- Kabalega organized Bunyoro kingdom by building a strong army called **Abarusura**.

Duties of the Abarusura.

- ❖ To promote peace and security in Bunyoro kingdom.
- ❖ To raid the neighbouring communities for expansion.
- ❖ To enforce law and order.

Factors that led to the expansion/ growth of Bunyoro kingdom.

- Bunyoro had able and strong leaders.
- Bunyoro had a strong standing army.
- Unity among the Banyoro.
- Bunyoro was strategically located around Lake Albert.
- Bunyoro had plenty of food for the growing population.



Omukama Kabalega



Omukama Solomon Gafabusa Iguru

Note:

- ➢ *Bunyoro kingdom faced many challenges when their king Kabalega was invaded and exiled by the British to* ***Seychelles islands*** *in the Indian ocean by the help of* ***Semei Kakungulu*** *for resisting against colonial rule.*
- ➢ *After the death of Kabalega at Jinja, his son Yosia Kitahimbwa succeeded him.*
- ➢ *Omukama Kamurasi welcomed Sir Samuel Baker in Bunyoro kingdom.*
- ➢ *During the reign of omukama Kyebambe Nyamutukura, his son called* ***Prince Kaboyo*** *left the palace and started* ***Tooro kingdom****.*

Factors that led to the decline of Bunyoro kingdom.

- **The kingdom was too big to be ruled by one person.**
- **The rise of Bunyoro's neighbours eg. Tooro, Buganda.**
- **The kingdom had internal conflicts.**
- **The coming of the colonialists.**

TOORO KINGDOM

- **The title given to the king of Tooro is omukama.**
- **The current king of Tooro is Oyo Nyimba Kabamba Iguru IV.**
- **Currently,Tooro covers districts like Kabarole, Kyenjojo, Kyegegwa, Kamwenge.etc.**

➢ **Note:-** *When omukama Kabalega overthrew and exiled omukama Kasagama,* ***Capt. Frederick Lugard*** *restored omukama Kasagama of Tooro back to his throne.*



Omukama Oyo Nyimba Kabamba Iguru

Reasons why Tooro broke away from Bunyoro kingdom.

- **The Batooro felt that they were not adequately protected by the king of Bunyoro from their enemies.**
- **The Batooro felt that they were very far from the capital of Bunyoro since they would take long to see the king.**
- **Prince Kaboyo was very greedy and impatient for power since he had been appointed as a clan leader which had reduced his chances of becoming a king.**

ANKOLE KINGDOM.

- **Ankole kingdom is believed to have been founded by Ruhinda the son Wamala, the last king of the Bachwezi.**
- **Ankole kingdom is located in the South Western part of Uganda.**
- **The title given to the king of Ankole was Omugabe.**

Famous kings of Ankole.

- **Omugabe Ntare.**
- **Omugabe Kahaya.**
- **Omugabe Charles Gasyonga.**

DECENTRALISED SOCIETIES OF UGANDA.

- **Decentralised societies are societies that had no central rulers.**
- **These societies did not form kingdoms in Uganda.**

Examples of tribes that did not form kingdoms in Uganda.

- **Bakiga.**
- **Bagwere.**
- **Bagisu.**
- **Basamia.**
- **Bamba.**
- **Acholi.**
- **Alur.**
- **Iteso.**
- **Karimojong.**

Reasons why some tribes in Uganda did not form kingdoms.

- **They never lilved a settled life.**
- **They were disunited.**
- **They wre not organised.**

ECONOMIC ORGANISATION OF PEOPLE OF PRE-COLONIAL EAST AFRICA.

- Pre-colonial socities in Uganda organised themselves in trade communities.

Ways the people of pre-colonial Uganda were economically organized.

- Through practising their traditional occupation.e.g. cultivation, pastoralism, fishing etc.
- Through iron smelting.
- Through carrying out trade. The main system of trade was barter trade because there was no medium of exchange during that time.

Economic activities that were carriedout by people in different societies.

- Crop Growing
- Fishing
- Trade
- Iron Smelting
- Pottery
- Salt Mining
- Pastoralism
- Hunting

TRADE.

- Trade is the buying and selling of goods and services.

Systems of trade.

- Barter trade.
- Monetary trade.

BARTER TRADE.

- Barter trade is the exchange of goods for goods or services.
- It was the commonest system of trade amongst the people of pre-colonial Uganda because there was no money by then.

Items of trade that were exchanged during barter trade in Uganda.

-Salt, -matooke, -slaves, -bark cloth, -ivory, -hides and skin, -animals, -iron tools, -herbal medicine.

Factors that enabled barter trade to be carried out.

- Absence of currency.
- Production of different goods by communities.
- Unity and friendship among people.

Advantages of barter trade.

- It cheap since it doesn't involve the use of money.
- It creates friendship and unity among traders.
- It favours people without money.
- It creates chances of employment to people.
- It is easy for the illiterates.
- You use what you have to get what you don't have.

Disadvantages of barter trade.

- There is double coincidence of wants (difficult to get people with the same wants.)
- It was hard to store wealth.
- There was no standard measure of value for goods.
- It does not favour people with out physical goods.
- It was difficult to move with bulky goods over long distances.
- There is wastage of time to look for a person with what you want.

Effects of barter trade on the people of pre-colonial people of East Africa.

- It promoted peace and unity.
- It enabled people get new items of trade.
- It promoted friendship among people.

- It led to development of trade routes.

MONETARY TRADE.

- This is the system of trade that involves the use of money as a medium of exchange.
- When the Arabs came to East Africa, they changed the medium of exchange when they brought cowrie shells from Maldive islands.
- Cowrie shells was form of currency to be introduced by the Arabs in East Africa.
- Indian rupees was the second form of currency to be introduced in East Africa by the Indians.

Forms of money.

- Coins.
- Notes.

Uganda's currency in coins.

- Shs50
- Shs100
- Shs200
- Shs500
- Shs1,000

Uganda's currency notes

- Shs1,000
- Shs2,000
- Shs5,000
- Shs10,000
- Shs20,000
- Shs50,000

Qualities of money.

- It should be portable.
- It should be divisible.
- It should be durable.
- It should be acceptable.

Uses of money.

- It is used as medium of exchange.
- It helps consumers to buy goods and services.
- It helps in payment of debts.
- It is a common measure of value.
- It promotes local and international trade.
- It helps in buying assets e.g. land house etc.

Ways in which people misuse money.

- Through drinking alcohol excessively.
- Through murdering people.
- Through bribing people.
- Through prostitution.

Advantages of monetary trade.

- There is a standard measure of value.
- It discourages cheating.
- It is easy to carry money than physical goods.

Disadvantages of monetary trade.

- Money can easily be lost.
- It doesn't not promote friendship among people.
- It encourages stealing.
-

SOCIAL ORGANISATION AMONG THE PEOPLE OF PRE-COLONIAL UGANDA.

- Social organisation refers to people's way of life,
- Long ago, the people of Uganda were socially organised under the following;
  - They formed clan units
  - They had families.
  - They had age groups.

- ❖ They had rules and regulations.
- ❖ They offered traditional education.
- ❖ They carried out social activities.
- ❖ They had traditional ways of worship.
- ❖ They performed traditional practices.
- ❖ They had taboos. (beliefs that forbade people from certain acts)

- Culture was highly respected by all people in the society.

CLANS

- **A clan** is an organised group of people under one ancestor / fore father.
- Clans are formed by families that are related to each other.
- **A Lineage** is a small group of people in a clan sharing the same ancestor.
- Each clan is headed by a clan leader.

Duties of a clan leader.

- ❖ To keep clan records.
- ❖ To register clan members.
- ❖ To allocate land to clan members.
- ❖ To organise clan ceremonies and functions.
- ❖ To settle disputes among clan members.
- ❖ To preside over clan meetings.
- ❖ To chair clan meetings.

Examples of clans in our community

- ❖ Lion clan
- ❖ Leopard clan
- ❖ Elephant clan
- ❖ Dog clan
- ❖ Sheep clan
- ❖ Goat clan

Symbols of a clan for identification.

- ❖ Clan name.
- ❖ A totem
- ❖ Drumming

Note:

- ✓ ***A totem*** *is a special animal, object or plant that is highly respected in a particular clan.*
- ✓ *Clan leaders organise meetings that bring different clan members together.*

EDUCATION.

- **Education** is the process of acquiring knowledge and skills.
- **Informal education** was the type of education that was provided to the people of pre-colonial Uganda.
- People were taught different skills such as hunting, building, iron smelting, cooking, playing games like wrestling etc.

People who provided informal education.

- ❖ Parents
- ❖ Leaders
- ❖ Elders

Importance of informal/ traditional education.

- ❖ It enables children to learn history through stories.
- ❖ Children learn practical skills like iron smelting etc.
- ❖ It promotes morals in the society.
- ❖ It promotes culture in the society.

WORSHIP

- **Worship** is an act of giving divine honour to God.
- The people of pre-colonial Uganda worshipped small gods.eg. Kiwanuka, Muwanga, Mukasa, Ddungu, Kibuuka.

- **African Traditional Religion (ATR) is the the religion that existed in Uganda before the introduction of foreign religions.**

Names of God in different societies.

- **Katonda-Baganda**
- **Ruhanga-Banyankole**
- **Were- Bagishu**
- **Kibumba-Basoga**
- **Rugaba- Banyoro**
- **Lokusuban-Iteso**
- **Nyulese-Kakwa**

Ways in which people worshipped their gods.

- **They offered drinks to them.**
- **By singing and drumming for gods.**
- **By praying to their gods.**
- **By roasting meat at fire places as offertories.**
- **By pouring some little drinks to the ground before taking them.**

Places where people worshipped from.

- **In shrines**
- **Under trees**
- **On hills**
- **In forests.**

Reasons why people worshipped God.

- **To get blessings**
- **To have children.**
- **To get rain.**
- **To get good harvests.**

➢ ***Note:-****Religious duties were performed by elders and medicine men.*

Examples of religions in our society today.

- **African Traditional Religion (ATR)**
- **Islam**
- **Bahai faith**
- **Christianity**
- **Hinduism**
- **Buddhism**

TABOOS

- **A taboo is a belief that forbids people from certain acts.**

Examples of taboos.

- **No whistling at night.**
- **No sitting on firestones.**
- **No eating your totem.**
- **No sitting on grinding stones.**
- **No sweeping at night.**

Importance of taboos.

- **They promote morals among children.**
- **They promote respect for elders.**
- **They promote safety.**
- **They promote unity among people.**

SOCIAL ACTIVITIES.

- **Social activities are activities that bring people together in the community.**
- **Such activities are performed by a group of people found in a particular area.**

Examples of social activities.

- **Child naming ceremony.**
- **Burial ceremony**
- **Wedding ceremony.**
- **Birthday party.**
- **Last funeral rites.**
- **Circumcision ceremony.**

- Graduation party.
- Initiation of the heir ceremony.

Importance of social activities.

- They promote unity among people.
- They strengthen clan norms.
- They promote culture.
- They promote morals among people.
- They promote peace and security in the community.
- They promote love among people.

CULTURE OF THE PEOPLE OF UGANDA.

- Culture is the way of life of the people in a given society.
- It refers to the behaviours, beliefs, norms, values and practices that are passed on from one generation to another.

Types of culture.

- Material culture.
- Non-material culture.

Material culture.

- These are physical things shared by people of the same community.
- It includes tangible things/ items used by people in their daily life.

Examples of material culture.

- Clothes.
- Weapons.
- Drums.
- Crafts.
- Food.
- Spears.

Non-material culture.

- These are thoughts and ideas shared by people of the same society.
- It includes the beliefs and practices of people in their societies.
- Non-material culture does not involve any physical objects.

Examples of non-material culture.

- Religion.
- Morals.
- Taboos.
- Dances.
- Language.

Ways of promoting culture.

- By allowing children to attend cultural ceremonies.
- By participating in cultural ceremonies.
- By teaching culture in schools.
- By preserving cultural institutions.
- By wearing cultural clothes.
- By organising cultural games.
- By organising cultural ceremonies.
- By telling stories and legends.

Terms related to culture.

- ✓ A Taboo is a belief that forbids people from certain acts.
- ✓ Customs are accepted practices of a given society.
- ✓ Norms are acceptable beliefs and behaviours in a given society.
- ✓ Values are beliefs taken to be right and important in the society.

Examples of cultural practices.

- Tattooing.
- Detoothing.
- Child naming.
- Cultural dances.
- Circumcision.
- Last funeral rites.

Dangers of some cultural practices.

- Some are painful eg. Female Genital Mutilation.
- Some cultural practices may cause injuries to the body.
- Some cultural practices transmit diseases.
- Some cultural practices lead to body deformity.

Importance of culture.

- Culture promotes unity among people.
- It promotes morals among people.
- It promotes identity.
- It promotes respect in the society.
- Cultural institutions promote development of areas.

VALUES.

✓ Values are beliefs taken to be right and important in the society.

Types of values.

- Personal values.
- Family values.
- Community values.

Examples of values.

- God fearing.
- Respect.
- Obedience
- Cooperation
- Patience.
- Cleanliness.
- Faithfulness.
- Honesty.
- Trust.
- Law abiding.
- Love for work.
- Helpfulness.

Importance of values.

- They promote morals among people.
- They promote respect in the community.
- They promote hardwork.
- They promote love among people.
- They promote cooperation and unity among people.
- They help to promote security in an area.

RELATIONSHIPS.

- Relationships refers to the way people interact with one another.
- Relationships enable people to live in peace with others.

Types of relationships.

- Blood relationship. eg. father, mother, grand parents, sister, brother.
- Peer relationship. eg. age groups, classmates etc.
- Marriage relationship eg. wife, father-in-law, mother-in-law etc.

Importance of having relationships.

- They promote peace and security.
- They promote unity among people.
- They promote problem solving.
- They promote hard work and development through cooperation.
- They promote love among people.
- They promote development.

Dangers of some relationships.

- Some relationships lead to laziness.
- Some relationships lead to early pregnancies.
- Some relationships lead to enmity among members of families and communities.
- Some relationships lead to insecurity in the community.
- Some relationships lead to immorality.





1. Mention the three stages of stone age.
2. Which important discovery enabled early man to sleep in caves?
3. State any two characteristics of old stone age man.
4. Give two ways the discovery of fire helped early man to live in caves.
5. Give any two ways a dog was useful to early man.
6. Which important discovery marked the end of the early stone age?

7. State any two ways the discovery of iron smelting helped to improve early man's life.
8. What is an Ethnic group?
9. Mention the largest ethnic group in Uganda.
10. Give any two reasons for the settlement of the Bantu in the interlacustrine region.
11. Complete the table below.

Ethnic group	*Cradle*	*Any two tribes*
(i) ----------	----------	-Baganda ----------
(ii) ----------	Bahr-el-Ghazal	-------- ----------
(iii) ----------	----------	-Sabiny ----------
(iv) Plain Nilotes.	----------	--------- Iteso
(v) ----------	----------	Bahima ----------
(vi) The Sudanic	----------	--------- ----------

12. State any three reasons for the migration and settlement of the Bantu.
13. Give any two positive effects of the Bantu migration into Uganda.
14. How did the migration of the Bantu into Uganda affect the Bushmen?
15. Why are the Nilotes called so?
16. Mention the three sub-groups of the Nilotes.
17. How did the Alur tribe come into existence in Uganda?
18. Give any two reasons why some tribes under the Nilo-Hamites changed from pastoralism to mixed farming after settling in Uganda.
19. From which direction did the following ethnic groups enter into Uganda?
    (i) Bantu
    (ii) Hamites
    (iii) River-Lake Nilotes
    (iv) Nilo-Hamites.
20. Give any two effects of the migration of the Nilotics into Uganda.
21. State any two problems that were faced by the early migrants into Uganda.
22. How is Emigration different from Immigration?
23. Give any two reasons why many youths migrate from rural areas to towns today.
24. Give any two ways the migratyion of people from villages to towns affects the development of rural areas.
25. State any two steps the government of Uganda can take to encourage the migration and settlement of people from towns to villages.
26. State any two causes of urban-rural migration.
27. Give one way the people living in villages benefit from those who live in towns.
28. Mention the three types of settlement patterns.
29. Give two ways the pre-colonial societies in Uganda organized themselves.
30. State any two political contributions of the Bachwezi in Uganda.
31. Why did the Bachwezi dig ditches in Bunyoro-Kityara?
32. Mention the earliest empire to be formed in Uganda.
33. State any three socio-economic contributions if the Bachwezi in Uganda.
34. Mention any three factors that led to the collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara empire.
35. Why were some tribes in Uganda able to form kingdoms?
36. Give any two ways kingdoms are important in a country.
37. Mention any three factors that led to the growth and expansion of Buganda kingdom.
38. Mention the system of trade that was common amongst the people of pre-colonial Uganda.
39. Mention any three ways the people of pre-colonial Uganda were socially organised.
40. Give the meaning of the term Culture.
41. Give any two ways of promoting culture in our society today.
42. Mention any two types of relationships.
43. Write down any three examples of values observed by people in our society today.
44. Which cultural practice is common amongst the Bagishu?
45. State any three ways culture is important in the society.

TOPIC 7: FOREIGN INFLUENCE IN UGANDA.

- **A foreigner** is a person who comes and lives in a country that is not his/her own.
- A foreigners usually come from foreign countries.
- **Foreign influence** refers to the different changes that took place in Uganda as a result of the coming of the foreigners.

Groups of foreigners who came to Uganda.

- Traders.
- Explorers.
- Christian missionaries.
- Colonial administrators/ The Colonialists

EARLY FOREIGN TRADERS IN UGANDA.

- This group of foreigners mainly came to trade.
- Traders who came to Uganda came in three main groups.

These include;-

- Arab traders.
- Indian traders.
- European traders.

THE ARAB TRADERS.

- This was the first group of foreigners to come to Uganda.
- The Arab traders came from Arabia.
- The Arabs used special boats called dhows to sail across the Indian ocean.
- The dhows were driven to and from the coast of East Africa by the monsoon winds.
- The settled along the coast of East Africa and formed the Zenj empire.



A dhow

- The coast of East Africa was named the "Land of zenj" meaning "the land of black people" because the East African coast was occupied by black people..
- Ahmed Bin Ibrahim was the first Arab trader to come to Uganda.
- He was welcomed by kabaka Ssuuna II.

Reasons for the coming of the Arab traders to Uganda.

- To carry out trade.
- To spread the Islamic faith.
- Some were running away from religious wars and persecution in their home country.

Examples of trade items the Arabs brought to Uganda by the Arabs.

-Guns - mirrors - gun powder -ornaments - beads -glasses - jewellery - carpets - clothes etc.

Note:

- ✓ *The Arabs exchanged their goods with the people of Uganda through a trade called Long distance trade.*
- ✓ ***Long distance trade*** *was the trade carried out between the people in the interior and those at the coast of East Africa.*
- ✓ *It was called Long distance trade because it involved moving long distances.*
- ✓ *The Arab traders moved in caravans for protection against their enemies.*
- ✓ *Long distance trade led to expansion of kingdoms in uganda eg. Buganda.*
- ✓ *Many towns also developed along the Long distance trade routes. These routes later became major roads.*

Tribes in Uganda which participated in the Long distance trade.

- ➢ *Baganda.*
- ➢ *Banyoro.*

Examples of trade items the Arabs got from Uganda.

-Ostrich feathers - ivory - gold - local salt - slaves - hides -wax -iron ore -copper etc.



Cowrie shells



Zebu cattle

Effects for the coming of Arab traders in Uganda.

a) Positive effects/contributions.

- **They introduced new trade items.**
- **They introduced Islamic faith.**
- **They introduced Swahili culture. (through the intermarriages of the coastal Bantu and the Arabs.)**
- **They introduced new crops like rice, cloves etc.**
- **They introduced zebu cattle.**
- **They introduced cowrie shells. (the first form of money to used in Uganda.)**
- **They introduced the Arab styles of dressing.**
- **They introduced new styles of building houses.**

Negative effects for the coming of the Arabs into Uganda.

- **The exploited Uganda's resources.**
- **They started slave trade in Uganda.**
- **They increased poaching of elephants for ivory.**
- **They led to loss of culture of the people of Uganda.**

Reasons why the Arabs took long to enter the interior of East Africa/ Uganda.

- **They attacks from hostile people in the interior.**
- **There were no clear routes to the interior of East Africa.**
- **They feared attacks from dangerous wild animals.**

Reasons why the Arabs took long to spread Islam in Uganda.

- **The Arabs were more interested in trade than spreading islam.**
- **There were very few Islamic preachers in Uganda.**
- **The people of Uganda hated the Arabs for being slave traders.**
- **Arabic language was so difficult for the people of Uganda to understand.**
- **The people of Uganda feared some Islamic practices such as circumcision, fasting etc.**

Problems that were faced by the Arab traders in Uganda.

- **Attacks from hostile people.**
- **Attacks from wild animals.**
- **Attacks from tropical diseases.**
- **They walked long and tiresome journeys.**
- **Difficulty in communication with the natives.**

SLAVE TRADE IN UGANDA.

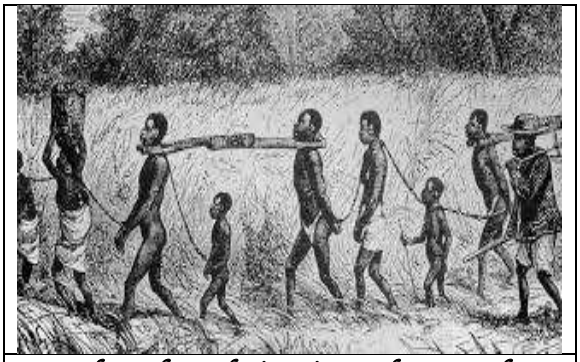
- **Slave trade is the buying and selling of human beings.**
- **A slave is a person who is owned and controlled by another person.**
- **Slavery is the state of being owned by another person.**
- **Slave trade was introduced in Uganda by the Arab traders.**

Reasons why slave trade was introduced.

- **Slaves were needed to carry goods from the interior to the coast of East Africa.**
- **There was need for labour on plantations and in mines.**
- **Slaves were needed to do domestic work abroad.**
- **Kings and chiefs wanted to sell their war captives.**

Ways slaves were got/ obtained.

- **Through raiding villages.**
- **Through buying war captives from African chiefs and kings.**
- **Through capturing lonely people.**



Slaves from the interior to the coast of East Africa

Most famous slave traders in East Africa.

- **Abu Said**
- **Fundikiri**
- **Msri**
- **Hamed Bin Muhammed (Tippu Tip)-He was the most powerful slave trader in East Africa.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Baganda*** *and* ***Banyoro*** *were actively involved in slave trade in Uganda.*
- ✓ *The largest slave market in East Africa was at* ***Zanzibar.***
- ✓ ***Khartoumers*** *were the worst slave traders from Egypt and Sudan. They raided people of Northern Uganda i.e. Acholi, Alur and Lugbara for slaves.*
- ✓ ***Sir Samuel Baker*** *built* ***Fort Patiko*** *which protected the people of Northern Uganda from the Khartoumers who were slave traders.*

  Qn. *Why was Sir Samuel Baker liked by most people in Acholi land?*

  Qn. *How did Sir Samuel Baker help to end slave trade in Northern Uganda?*

Abolition of slave trade.

- **The move to stop slave trade was started by Dr. David Livingstone who wrote negative reports about the evils of slave trade to his home government.**
- **This led to the coming of the missionaries who decampaigned slave trade.**

Steps which were taken to end slave trade.

- **Slave markets were closed.**
- **By signing treaties.**
- **Britain made slave trade illegal.**
- **Through writing articles about the evils of slave trade.**
- **Through use of military force.**
- **Through decampaining by the missionaries.**
- **By constructing the Kenya–Uganda railway. This enabled traders to use trains in transporting goods instead of using human beings.**

Treaties that were signed to abolish/ stop slave trade in East Africa.

- **Moresby treaty: It was signed between Fairfax Moresby and Sultan Seyyid Said in 1822.**
- **Hamerton treaty: It was signed between colonel Hamerton and Seyyid said in 1845.**
- **Frere treaty: It was signed by Bartle Frere and Sultan Barghash in 1873.**

People who participated in the abolition of slave trade in East Africa.

- ❖ **Dr. David livingstone.**

  He wrote negative reports about the evils of slave trade to his home country.

  This led to the coming of the missionaries who decampaigned slave trade.
- ❖ **Sir Samuel Baker.**

  He built fort Patiko to protect the people of Northern Uganda from slave traders.
- ❖ **Sir William Wilberforce**

He decampained the evils of slave trade through the British parliament.

- **Seyyid Said**
  He helped the British army to fight slave traders in the Indian ocean.
- **Adam Smith**
- **Granville Sharp**
- **Thomas Clarkson**

Note: *After the abolition of slave trade in East Africa, Zanzibar and Bagamoyo were made a home of freed slaves.*

Reasons why it was difficult to stop slave trade.

- **Kings and chiefs were supporting it.**
  This was because they were getting a lot of wealth from it because it was profitable.
- **There was still need for cheap labour on plantation farms and in mines.**
- **The Arabs opposed the abolition of slave trade.**
- **Britain thought stopping slave trade would weaken its naval power.**

Effects of slave trade in Uganda.

a) **Positive effects of slave trade.**
   - **It led to introduction of Islamic religion in East Africa.**
   - **It led to development of Kiswahili language and culture.**
   - **It led to expansion of kingdoms.**
   - **It to introduction of new trade items.**
   - **Uganda was known to the outside world.**

b) **Negative effects of slave trade.**
   - **It led to death of people.**
   - **Families broke up.**
   - **It led to destruction of property.**
   - **It led to hatred between traditional rulers and natives.**
   - **It led to exploitation of Uganda's resources.**
   - **Many people were displaced from their homes.**
   - **It led to decline of agriculture as people were always at run.**
   - **It increased famine as energetic people who would carryout farming were taken as slaves.**

THE INDIAN TRADERS IN UGANDA.

- **These came from India.**
- **They came into groups i.e.Banyans and Indian coolies.**
- **The Banyans was the major group of Indian traders.**
- **The Banyans used to lend money to the local traders in Uganda.**
- **The Indian coolies were brought to build the Kenya-Uganda railway.**

Reasons for the coming of the Indians to Uganda.

- **They came to find new trade items.**
- **They came to find market for their processed/ manufactured goods.**
- **The Indian coolies came to construct the Uganda railway.**

Contributions of the Indians to the economic development of Uganda.

- **They opened up shops in Uganda e.g.Allidina Visram who started up the first shop in Kampala.**
- **The Indian coolies built the Kenya–Uganda railway.**
- **They introduced rupees as a new form of currency.**
- **The Banyans lent money to the local traders.**
- **The Indians started sugarcane plantations in Uganda.**
- **They introduced Rupees as a form of currency.**
- **They built industries in East Africa e.g. Kakira sugar factory by Madhivan and Lugazi sugar factory by Mehta.**

Note:-

- ✓ ***The Rupees*** *was the second form of currency to be used in Uganda.*
- ✓ *It replaced the Cowrie shells.*

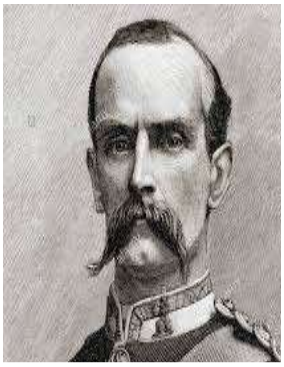
EUROPEAN TRADERS.

- **This group of traders came from Europe.**
- **European traders carried out their work through the Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO).**
- **IBEACO was formed by Sir William Mackinnon.**
- **It carried out its work in East Africa (in both Uganda and Kenya)**
- **Captain Frederick Lugard was the representative of IBEACO in Uganda.**

Reasons why IBEACO was formed.

- ❖ **To carry out trade.**
- ❖ **To protect the missionaries.**
- ❖ **To maintain British influence in Uganda.**
- ❖ **To improve communication and transport network in Uganda.**





Sir William Mackinnon. Capt. Frederick Lugard

Responsibilities of IBEACO in Uganda.

- ❖ **It collected taxes on behalf of the British government.**
- ❖ **It protected the missionaries.**
- ❖ **It appointed administrators.**
- ❖ **It set up a British commercial empire in East Africa.**

Note:

- ✓ *Time came and IBEACO withdrew its activities in Uganda. This was because IBEACO had run bankrupt.*
- ✓ ***Bishop Alfred Tucker*** *asked for funds from the Church Missionary Society (CMS) to support the work of IBEACO in Uganda.*
- ✓ *Before IBEACO withdrew its activities in Uganda, Sir Gerald Portal was sent to write a report on its activities.*
- ✓ *On* ***31 March 1893,*** *the IBEACO formally ended its involvement in Uganda.*
- ✓ *Missionaries, led by* ***Alfred Tucker,*** *requested the British government to take over the administration of Uganda in place of the IBEACO, arguing that British withdrawal would lead to a continuance of the religious civil war.*

Reasons why IBEACO ran bankrupt.

- ❖ **It lacked a reliable source of income.**
- ❖ **It employed many personnel who needed big pay.**
- ❖ **It got involved in political administration which was costly.**
- ❖ **It controlled a too large territory.**

EUROPEAN EXPLORERS IN UGANDA.

- **An explorer is a person who goes to a place of interest to find out more about it.**
- **Most Explorers who came to Uganda came from Europe.**
- **Most European explorers who came to Uganda wanted to find the source of River Nile**
- **Most European explorers who came to Uganda were sponsored by by the Royal Geographical Society (RGS).**
- **Most Explorers who came to Uganda used the route through Bagamoyo in Tanzania.**

Why most European explorers who came to Uganda entered through Bagamoyo.

- **There was a direct route from Bagamoyo to Uganda.**
- **The route through Bagamoyo had friendly people.**

Qn: *Why was it difficult for explorers who travelled to Uganda to pass through Kenya?*

Why most European explorers who came to Uganda first went to Zanzibar.

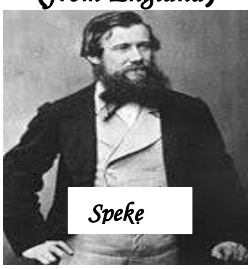
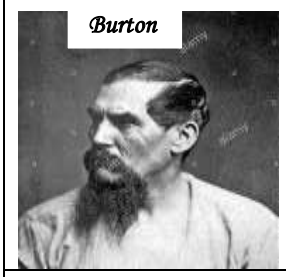
- **To learn Kiswahili language.**
- **To get permission from the sultan of Zanzibar.**
- **To get porters to carry their supplies.**

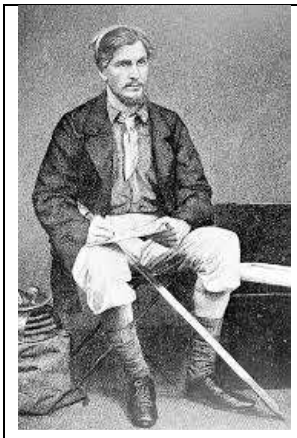
Reasons for the coming of Explorers to Uganda.

- **They wanted to find the source of River Nile.**
- **They wanted to study the geography of Uganda.**
- **They wanted to pave way for the coming of the colonialists.**
- **They wanted to open up away for the missionaries.**

Famous Explorers who came to Uganda.

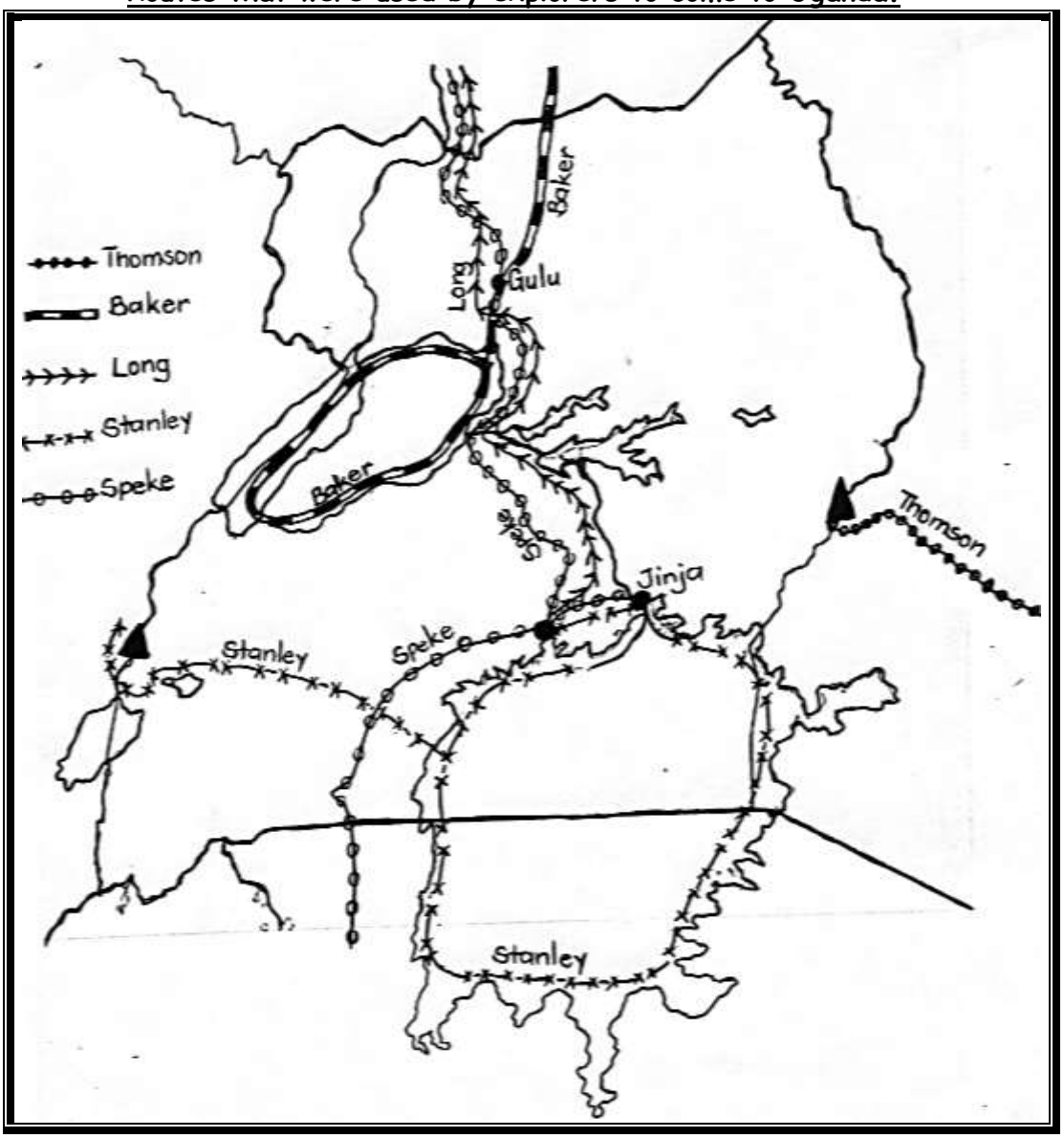
- **John Speke.**
- **James Grant.**
- **Henry Morton Stanley.**
- **Sir Samuel Baker.**
- **Joseph Thomson.**

John Speke and Richard Burton. (in 1856) (*from England*)  *Speke*  *Burton*	❖ **John speke was the first European explorer to come to Uganda. He made two journeys to Uganda.** ❖ **In the first journey, he travelled with Richard Burton. They were welcomed by the Sultan of Zanzibar.** ❖ **They were sent by the Royal Geographical Society to search for the source of river Nile.** ❖ **They left Zanzibar, via Bagamoyo to Tabora.** ❖ **From Tabora, they continued westwards and saw lake Tanganyika.** ❖ **After realizing that they ahd taken a wrong route, Speke and Burton returned to Tabora.** ❖ **While in Tabora, Richard Burton fell sick and John Speke left him there. When Speke left Burton at Tabora,he moved northwards and saw a big water body (lake Victoria) which he believed to be the source of river Nile.** ❖ **When he returned to Tabora, he told Burton about his findings but Burton disagreed and the two returned to Europe as enemies.**
John Speke and James Grant (in 1860) (*from England*)	❖ **Due to the misunderstandings between John Speke and Richard Burton, Speke was sent back to search for the source of the Nile.** ❖ **John Speke made the second journey with James Grant.**

 *James Grant*	❖ **When they reached Karagwe, they were welcomed by king Rumanika. Unfortunately,Grant fell sick and he was left at Karagwe.** ❖ **John Speke continued to move northwards until and he reached the palace of Kabaka Muteesa I at Banda.** ❖ **Kabaka Muteesa I welcomed him.** ❖ **John Speke gave Muteesa I gifts which included;** - **Rifle (gun).** - **Knives.** - **Cloths.** ❖ **On 25th July,1862, John Speke saw the source of River Nile.** ❖ **He also named the the <u>Ripon falls</u> at the source of River Nile after Lord Ripon who was the president of Royal Geographical Society (RGS) by then.** ❖ **He was later joined by James Grant and the two moved northwards.** ❖ **Omukama Kamurasi of Bunyoro stopped them from crossing his kingdom because he thought that they were going to take over his land.** **Note:-** ➢ *John Speke and James Grant met Sir Samuel Baker and his wife in **Gondokoro** in Southern Sudan in 1863.* ➢ *They told him that they had seen the source of River Nile.*
Sir Samuel Baker and Jane Baker (*from England*) 	❖ **Sir Samuel Baker tried to find the source of River Nile from its mouth.** ❖ **After knowing that John Speke had discovered the source of River Nile, Sir Samuel Baker reached the palace of Omukama Kamurasi in Bunyoro.** ❖ **He become the first European explorer to see Lake Mwitanzingye and named it <u>Lake Albert</u> after the husband of Queen Victoria of England.** ❖ **Mwitanzingye means "killer of locusts".** ❖ **He also saw Kabalega falls and named them <u>Murchison falls</u> after Lord Murchison who was the president of the Royal Geographical Society by then.**
Joseph Thomson (*from Scotland*) 	❖ **He was sent by the Royal Geographical Society to find the shortest route from the East African coast to lake Victoria.** ❖ **He was the first European explorer to cross the land of the Masai and Nandi successfully.** ❖ **He saw mountain Masaba and named it mountain Elgon.**

Henry Morton Stanley (*from Wales*)   *Chaille Long*	❖ **Stanley came to Africa in three different occasions.** **<u>Stanley's 1st journey in 1871.</u>** ❖ **He came to look for Dr. David Livingstone.** ❖ **He was sponsored by two newspapers namely;-** - **Daily telegraph.** - **New York Herald tribune.** **<u>Stanley's 2nd journey in 1874.</u>** **He was sent to prove whether lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.** ❖ **He used his canoe he had named Lady Alice to circumnavigate lake Victoria.** **Henry Morton Stanley circumnavigated lake Victoria to prove whether lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.** ❖ **In 1875, Henry Morton Stanley reached Kabaka Muteesa I's palace and requested him to allow missionaries to come to Uganda.** ❖ **On Kabaka's request, Henry Morton Stanley wrote a letter on behalf of Kabaka Muteesa I inviting Christian missionaries to come to Uganda.** ❖ **The letter was taken by <u>Linant de Bellefonds.</u> And it appeared in the Daily Telegraph newspaper.** **Note:** ✓ ***Linant de Bellefonds*** *arrived in the Kabaka's palace in April 1875. This is where he also met Henry Morton Stanley.* ✓ *He collaborated with Stanley's idea of inviting the missionaries.* ✓ *Bellefonds was killed in Sudan on 26th August 1875 and the letter was sent to Charles Gordon, the governor of the Equatoria province, who sent it to the Queen of England.* **Henry Morton Stanley then moved westwards and saw Mountain Rwenzori and named it "the mountains of the moon" This was because of the snow on its peak which glitters like a moon.** ❖ **He also saw and named lake Edward and lake George.** ❖ **He then continued westwards through Democratic Republic of Congo and returned to Europe.** **<u>Stanley's 3rd journey (1887-1890).</u>** ❖ **He came to rescue Emin Pasha from the Equatorial province.**
Charles Chaille Long (*from America*)	❖ **He was the first European to see lake Kyoga.** ❖ **He arrived in Buganda in 1874 and became the second European explorer to see Lake Victoria.**

Routes that were used by explorers to come to Uganda.



Effects of the coming of European explorers to Uganda.

- **Uganda was made known to the rest of the world.**
- **They renamed physical features e.g. Lake Victoria instead of Nalubaale.**
- **They paved way for the coming of the missionaries and the colonialists.**

How exploration work led to colonisation of Uganda.

- *Explorers made reports about the rich natural resources of Uganda which attracted the colonialists.*

Problems that were faced by the European explorers in Africa.

- **They moved long and tiresome journeys.**
- **Attacks from dangerous animals.**
- **Shortage of supplies like food, medicine.**
- **Attacks from tropical diseases.**
- **Attacks from hostile people.**
- **Difficulty in communication with the natives.**

CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN UGANDA.

- ❖ **A missionary** is a person who spreads his /her religion in a foreign land.
- ❖ **A Christian missionary** is a person who spreads Christianity in a foreign land/ country.
- ❖ **A missionary society** is an organisation of people with the interest of teaching a religion in a foreign country.
- ❖ **A mission station** is a place where people are taught about a certain religion.

Reasons for the coming of Christian missionaries to Uganda.

- ❖ To spread Christianity (main reason)
- ❖ To spread their culture.
- ❖ To improve the living conditions of the people of Uganda.
- ❖ To promote Western education and civilisation.
- ❖ To suppress the spreading of Islam.
- ❖ Some came to complete the work of Dr.David Livingstone.
- ❖ To introduce legitimate trade.

Invitation of the Christian missionaries to Uganda.

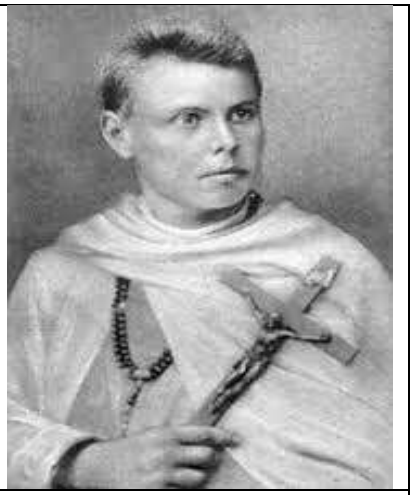
- Kabaka Muteesa I invited the Christian missionaries to Uganda.
- Henry Morton Stanley wrote a letter on behalf of Kabaka Muteesa I inviting the Christian missionaries to Uganda.
- This letter was written and sent in 1875 to Queen Victoria of England asking her to allow missionaries to come and spread Christianity in Buganda.
- The letter was taken by **Linant de Bellefonds**.

Reasons why Kabaka Muteesa I invited the Christian Missionaries.

- He wanted them to teach his people how to read and write.
- He wanted them to spread Christianity in his kingdom.
- He wanted them to bring him guns for protection against his enemies.
- To get trade partners.

Main groups of Christian missionaries that came to Africa.

- Protestant missionaries
- Catholic missionaries.

		
Alexander Mackay	***The First printing press that was introduced by Alexander Mackay***	***Father Simon Lourdel (Mapeera)***

THE PROTESTANT MISSIONARIES.

- **This was the first group of missionaries to come to Uganda.**
- **They came from Scotland, Germany and England.**
- **The Protestant missionaries to Uganda were mainly sponsored by the Church missionary Society (CMS).**

Note:-*The Church Missionary Society* *(CMS) sponsored the journeys of the protestant missionaries who came to Uganda.*

- **The first group of protestant missionaries arrived in Uganda on 31st July, 1887.**

These were;-

- **Rev CT Wilson.**
- **Shergold Smith.**
- **O'Neil.**

Alexander Mackay.

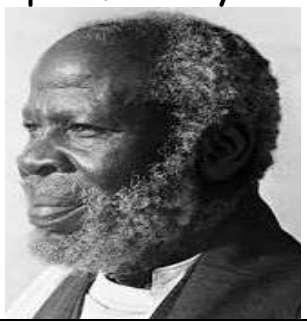
- **The first group of protestant missionaries to Uganda was led by Alexander Mackay who joined them later in 1878.**
- **Mackay was a teacher, a builder and a carpenter.**
- **Alexander Mackay had his station at Nateete.**
- **He taught practical and vocational skills like carpentry.**

Importance of the printing press to the early missionaries.

- **The printing press was used to print reading materials.**
- **It was use to print prayer books.**
  - ***Note****:-In 1879, other protestant missionaries comprising Litch Field, CW Pearson and Dr. Felkin also came to Uganda.*

Other protestant missionaries in Uganda.

Missionary	*Contribution(s)*
Dr. Albert Cook	• **He built Mengo hospital.(the first hospital in Uganda and East Africa in 1897)** • **He treated people suffering from sleeping sickness on the shores of lake Victoria.**
Kenneth Borup	• **He introduced the fast growing cotton seeds in Uganda in 1903.** **This cotton was called the American upland cotton.**
Robert Ashe	• **He introduced the first bicycle in Uganda.**
Bishop Alfred Tucker	• **He 45obilized funds from Europe to support the activities of IBEACo, when it had run bankrupt.**
Bishop Hannington. 	• **He was murdered by chief Luba in Busoga on the orders of Kabaka Mwanga.** • **He was murdered for using a wrong route to enter into Buganda (the Eastern route which the Baganda called the back door)** • **They believed that any white man who enters into Buganda through the back door would overthrow the kabaka.**

Apollo Kivebulaya 	• He was a Muganda missionary. • He spread Christianity in areas of Tooro and Eastern parts of Democratic Republic of Congo. • He is sometimes referred to as the "apostle to the pygmies" for his work among the Bambuti people of the Ituri forest in Eastern Congo. • He is considered the principal pioneer of the Anglican church in the Belgian Congo.

THE ROMAN CATHOLIC MISSIONARIES.

This was the second group of christian missionaries to come to Uganda.

- They introduced the Catholic faith in Uganda.

Examples of Roman catholic missionaries who came to Uganda.

- Fr. Simon Lourdel
- Bro. Amans Delmas
- Fr. Leon Barbot
- Fr. Girault Lodovic.

These came from Italy, France, and England.

Groups of Roman catholic missionaries that came to East Africa.

- The White fathers from France.
- The Holy Ghost fathers from France.
- The Mill Hill fathers from England.
- The Verona fathers from Italy.



The first Roman Catholic missionarties to Uganda

The White fathers.

- They were the first Roman catholic missionaries to come to Uganda.
- They were sent by Cardinal lavengeric from Algeria.
- They were led by father Simon Lourdel (father Mapeera) and Brother Amans Delmas.
- They arrived in Uganda on 17th February,1879.
- They were later joined by Fr. Leon Livinhac.

The Mill hill fathers.

- They built Namilyango college in 1902. It was the first boarding to be built by Christian missionaries in Uganda.
- They arrived in Uganda in 1895. They included, Bishop Hanthon, Fr. T. Matthias, Fr. J.K Kestes.



Rubaga cathedral is one of the churches that was built by the missionaries.

The Verona Fathers.

- **They arrived in Uganda in 1910. They had the mission stations in Northern Uganda ie. in Moroto and Gulu.**

Reasons why some Africans accepted Christianity.

- **They wanted to learn how to read and write.**
- **They expected to get gifts from the missionaries.**
- **Some of them wanted to get protection against their enemies.**

Problems faced by the Christian missionaries in Uganda.

- **Difficulty in communication with the natives.**
- **Opposition from hostile people.**
- **Attacks from wild animals.**
- **They walked long and tiresome distances.**
- **Opposition from the Arabs.**
- **Attacks from tropical diseases.**
- **Shortage of supplies like medicine.**



Namirembe cathedral was built by the protestant missionaries



Gayaza High School

Effects for the coming of Christian missionaries to Uganda. (Contributions of the Christian missionaries in Uganda)

a) **Positive effects.**

- **They spread Christianity in Uganda.**
- **They introduced modern farming methods.**
- **They stopped slave trade.**
- **They built churches eg. Lubaga, Namirembe etc**
- **They introduced modern drugs.**
- **They built schools eg. Namilyango College in 1902, Gayaza High school by the CMS in 1904, Mengo High School by the CMS in 1898, King's College Budo by the CMS in 1906, St.Mary's College Kisubi by the White fathers in 1906 etc.**
- **They built hospitals eg. Mengo hospital, Nsambya hospital, Rubaga hospital, Lacor hospital etc.**
- **They discouraged negative cultural practices.**
- **They introduced modern means of transport eg.Robert Ashe who introduced the first bicycle in Uganda.**
- **They introduced new crops eg.cotton by Kenneth Borup.**
- **They taught Africans how to read and write/ introduced formal education.**
- **They taught people practical skills like carpentry, building and agriculture.**

Note:

- ***Formal education*** *is the type of education that replaced informal education.*
- *Formal education involved Reading, Writing and Arithmetic (3Rs).*

b) **Negative effects**.

- **Missionary work caused divisions among people according to religious sects.**
- **They led to the coming of colonialists in Uganda.**
- **They led to religious wars.**
- **They preached against African Traditional Religion (ATR).**
- **They undermined the culture of the people of Uganda.**
- **It retarded the development African technology.**

How missionary work led to the colonisation of Uganda.

- **Missionary work caused divisions among people which weakened societies in Uganda.**
- **Missionary teachings softened the hearts of the people of Uganda which made them warmly welcome the colonialists.**
- **Missionaries called their home governments for protection in case of attacks.**
- **Missionaries acted as interpreters for colonialists and the people of Uganda.**

Why Kabaka Muteesa I turned agaist the Christian missionaries.

- ✓ *They did not bring him guns as he expected.*
- ✓ *They preached against African culture.*

PERSECUTION OF THE EARLY CHRISTIAN CONVERTS IN UGANDA.

- **A Martyr is a person who is dies for his/ her faith in God.**
- **The Uganda Martyrs are a group of 23 Anglican and 22 Catholic converts to Christianity in the historical kingdom of Buganda, now part of Uganda, who were executed between 31 January 1885 and 27 January 1887.**
- **They were killed on orders of Mwanga II, the *Kabaka* (King) of Buganda.**
- **The deaths took place at a time when there was a three-way religious struggle for political influence at the Buganda royal court.**
- **Kabaka Mwanga II succeeded to the throne in 1884. He was concerned at the growing influence of Christianity and the rise of a new class of officials, distinct from the traditional territorial chiefs, who were educated, had a religious orientation, and wished to reform Ganda society.**
- **A year after becoming king,he ordered the execution of Yusufu Rugarama, Makko Kakumba and Nuwa Serwanga, who had converted to Christianity.**
- **On 29 October 1885 he had the incoming Anglican Bishop James Hannington killed at Chief Luba's fort in Busoga on the orders of Kabaka Mwanga because he had used a wrong route to enter into Buganda.**
- **The Baganda had a belief that any white man who enters into Buganda through the back door is coming to overthrow the kabaka.**
- **Mwanga instructed the killing of all the young men who disobeyed him – partly to satisfy the demands of the older chiefs. Twenty-two of the men, who had converted to Catholicism, were burned alive at Namugongo in 1886.**
- **Mwanga summoned the pages and asked those who prayed to stand to one side. These, most of whom were between 15 and 30 years old, were then taken on a long journey to execution by being burnt alive.**



Monument at <u>Munyonyo Martyrs Shrine</u> marking the spot from where the martyrs walked for death



Martyrdom of Andrew Kaggwa

CHRISTIAN UGANDA MARTYRS

No.	*Martyr's Name*	*Place of Birth*	*Clan*	*Religion*	*Martyred*		
					Date	*Place*	*Manner*
1.	Kakumba Makko	Buganda	Ffumbe	Anglican	Jan 31, 1885	Busega	***Dismembered and Burned***
2.	Rugarama Yusuf	Ankole		Anglican	Jan 31, 1885	Busega	***Dismembered and Burned***
3.	Sserwanga Nuwa	Buganda	Ngeye	Anglican	Jan 31, 1885	Busega	***Dismembered and Burned***
4.	Balikuddembe Y. Mukasa	Buganda	Kayozi	Catholic	Nov 15, 1885	Nakivubo	***Beheaded and Burned***
5.	Mukasa Musa	Buganda	Ffumbe	Anglican	May 25, 1886	Munyonyo	***Speared***
6.	Kaggwa Anderea	Bunyoro		Catholic	May 26, 1886	Munyonyo	***Beheaded***
7.	Ngondwe Ponsiano	Buganda	Nnyange	Catholic	May 26, 1886	Ttakajjunge	***Beheaded and Dismembered***
8.	Ssebuggwawo Denis	Buganda	Musu	Catholic	May 26, 1886	Munyonyo	***Beheaded***
9.	Bazzekuketta Antanansio	Buganda	Nkima	Catholic	May 27, 1886	Nakivubo	***Dismembered***
10	Gonza Gonzaga	Busoga	Mpologoma	Catholic	May 27, 1886	Lubowa	***Beheaded***
11	Mbwa Eriya	Buganda	Ndiga	Anglican	May 27, 1886	Mengo	***Castrated***
12	Muddu-aguma	Buganda		Anglican	May 27, 1886	Mengo	***Castrated***
13	Mulumba Matiya	Busoga	Lugave	Catholic	May 27, 1886	Old Kampala	***Dismembered***
14	Muwanga Daudi	Buganda	Ngonge	Anglican	May 27, 1886	Namanve	***Castrated***
15	Kayizzi Kibuuka	Buganda	Mmamba	Anglican	May 31, 1886	Mityana	***Castrated***
16	Mawaggali Nowa	Buganda	Ngabi	Catholic	May 31, 1886	Mityana	***Speared and torn by wild dogs.***
17	Mayanja Kitoogo	Buganda	Ffumbe	Anglican	May 31, 1886	Mityana	***Castrated***
18	Muwanga	Buganda	Nvuma	Anglican	May 31, 1886	Mityana	***Castrated***
19	Lwanga Karoli	Buganda	Ngabi	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	***Burned***
20	Baanabakintu Lukka	Buganda	Mmamba	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	***Burned***
21	Buuzabalyawo Yakobo	Buganda	Ngeye	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	***Burned***
22	Gyaviira	Buganda	Mmamba	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	***Burned***
23	Kibuuka Ambrosio	Buganda	Lugave	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	***Burned***
24	Kiriggwajjo Anatoli	Bunyoro		Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	***Burned***
25	Kiriwawanvu Mukasa	Buganda	Ndiga	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	***Burned***
26	Kiwanuka Achileo	Buganda	Lugave	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	***Burned***

27	Kizito	Buganda	Mmamba	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
28	Ludigo Mukasa Adolofu	Toro		Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
29	Mugagga	Buganda	Ngo	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
30	Sserunkuuma Bruno	Buganda	Ndiga	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
31	Tuzinde Mbaga	Buganda	Mmamba	Catholic	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
32	Kadoko Alexanda	Buganda	Ndiga	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
33	Kifamunnyanja	Buganda		Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
34	Kiwanuka Giyaza	Buganda	Mpeewo	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
35	Kizza Frederick	Buganda	Ngabi	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
36	Kwabafu	Buganda	Mmamba	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
37	Lwakisiga Mukasa	Buganda	Ngabi	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
38	Lwanga	Buganda		Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
39	Mubi-azaalwa	Buganda	Mbwa	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
40	Munyagabyangu Robert	Buganda	Mmamba	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
41	Muwanga Njigija	Buganda		Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
42	Nakabandwa Danieri	Buganda	Mmamba	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
43	Walukagga Nuwa	Buganda	Kasimba	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
44	Wasswa	Buganda	Mmamba	Anglican	June 3, 1886	Namugongo	*Burned*
45	Muzeeyi Jean-Marie	Buganda	Mbogo	Catholic	Jan 27, 1887	Mengo	*Beheaded*

Note:-

- ✓ *When commemorating the martyrs of Uganda, the Church of England includes **Archbishop Janani Luwum,** who was murdered in 1977 by Idi Amin's henchmen; they also commemorate Luwum separately on **17 February**.*
- ✓ *In 2014, Uganda celebrated 50 years since the Uganda Martyrs were canonised and elevated to sainthood by **Pope Paul VI** on **18 October 1964**.*
- ✓ *The **Munyonyo Martyrs Shrine** is a thanksgiving monument for their canonisation.*



Archibishop Janan Luwum

RELIGIOUS WARS IN BUGANDA

- **In September 1888, Mwanga planned to get rid of remaining Christian and Muslim leaders by leaving them to starve on an island in crocodile-infested Lake Victoria. Word of his plan leaked out and a rebellion by Christians and Muslims together brought Mwanga's brother Kiweewa to the throne.**
- **In October 1888, the Muslims seized power, expelled the Christian leaders and, when Kiweewa refused to be circumcised, deposed and killed him, replacing him with another brother, Kalema.**
- **In December 1888, Mwanga won support from Christians and in April 1889 advanced against the Buganda capital. He was defeated, but the Christian forces, led by the Protestant chief Apollo Kaggwa, retook the capital, enabling Mwanga to enter it triumphantly on 11 October 1889.**
- **The Muslims took refuge in the neighbouring kingdom of Bunyoro, which helped them to return victoriously in November 1889, but they suffered a decisive defeat in February 1890 and withdrew again to Bunyoro.**

- In 1888, Britain authorised the Imperial British East Africa Company to administer the East African territory assigned to Britain in its 1886 treaty with Germany.
- In November 1889, Mwanga asked the Company's agent Frederick Jackson for help. Jackson hesitated to accept the request, because he had been given orders not to enter Buganda.
- Dr.Carl Peters, an agent of the German East Africa company (GEACo), learning of Mwanga's appeal, decided to respond to it. He arrived at Mengo, Mwanga's new capital, a fortnight after the February 1890 defeat of the Muslims. Since these still presented a threat, Mwanga accepted his offer of a treaty.
- The agreement that Peters made with Mwanga was nullified by the 1 July 1890 treaty between Britain and Germany, which extended inland the line of division between their areas of influence in East Africa, leaving Buganda in the British sphere.
- The Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACO) sent Frederick Lugard, its military administrator, to Mengo, where in December 1890 he got Mwanga to accept for a period of two years an agreement with the Company. This agreement was advantageous for Mwanga when the Muslims in Bunyoro made another attempt to recover power.
- Friction between the Catholic and the Protestant parties led to fighting in January 1892 in Mengo.
- Lugard supported the Protestants against the stronger Catholic side in the fighting, forcing Mwanga and the Catholics to flee. Lugard managed to persuade Mwanga to return from German territory, where he had taken refuge, to Mengo on 30 March 1892 and to make a new treaty. This treaty assigned separate areas to Protestants (the largest area), Catholics and Muslims (only a small area); Mwanga himself nominally became a Protestant.

- With the aid of the Church Missionary Society, which used the deaths of their martyrs to win broad public support in Britain for acquiring Uganda, Lugard then successfully dissuaded Prime Minister William Ewart Gladstone and his cabinet from abandoning Uganda. The powers of the company were transferred to the British Crown on 1 April 1893 and on 27 August 1894, Mwanga accepted Buganda being made a British protectorate.
- However, on 6 July 1897 he declared war on the British. Defeated on 20 July in Buddu (in today's Masaka District), an area assigned to Catholics in the 1892 treaty, he again fled to German East Africa (Tanzania). He was declared deposed on 9 August. After a failed attempt to recover his kingdom, he was exiled in 1899 to the Seychelles, where he was received into the Anglican Church. He died in 1903, aged 35.

Causes of religious wars.

- Political struggle by different religious groups.
- Struggle for converts among religious groups.
- Kabaka Mwanga wanted to get rid of foreign religions.

COLONIAL ADMINISTRATORS IN UGANDA.

- **Colonialism** is the practice by which a powerful / superior country controls a weaker / inferior country.
- **A colonialist** is a person who controls an inferior country on behalf of his home country.
- **A colony** is a country which is controlled and developed by a powerful country with an aim of having permanent settlement.
- **A protectorate** is a country which is controlled and protected by a powerful country for economic gains with no aim of having permanent settlement.

Reasons for the coming of the colonialists to Uganda.

- ❖ They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.
- ❖ They wanted to invest their surplus capital.
- ❖ They wanted to find market for their processed goods.
- ❖ The desire for political pride.

EGYPT ATTEMPTS TO COLONISE UGANDA.

- The first country that attempted to colonise Uganda was Egypt.
- Egypt wanted to have full control over the flow of River Nile from its source.
- Khedive Ismael of Egypt appointed governors to help him establish Egyptian rule in the Equatorial province.
- Equatorial Province was an area made up of Southern part of Sudan and Northern Uganda.

Governors of the Equatorial province.

- Sir Samuel Baker.
- Charles Gordon
- Emin Pasha



Charles Gordon



Emin Pasha

Sir Samuel Baker.

- Sir Samuel Baker (in 1870) was the first governor of the Equatorial province.
- He built Fort Patiko in Northern Uganda in 1872 for protection against his enemies.
- He protected the people of Northern Uganda from the Khartoumers who were slave traders from Egypt and Sudan.

Charles Gordon

- Charles Gordon (in 1874) was appointed as the 2nd governor of the Equatorial province replacing Sir Samuel Baker.
- Gordon built fort Mruli near Masindi.
- He was more successful in creating additional trading posts in this area.
- In 1876, his views crashed with those of the Egyptian governor of Khartoum forcing him to go back to London.

Emin Pasha

- In 1878, Gordon was succeeded by the Chief Medical Officer of the Equatorial province Mehemet Emin Pasha originally known as Eduard Schnitzer.
- Pasha built Fort Wadelai in the Equatorial province.
- Pasha made his headquarters in Lado (now in South Sudan)
- He faced Mahdi revolt in Southern Sudan.
- Pasha managed to request assistance from Britain via Buganda.

- He was later rescued by Henry Morton Stanley and Emin Pasha was the last governor of the Equatorial Province.
- In 1898, the Mahdist state was overthrown by the Anglo-Egyptian force led by the British Field Marshal Lord Kitchener and the Equatorial was administered by the British.

THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF AFRICA.

- Scramble for Africa was the struggle among European countries to have territories in Africa.
- Partition of Africa was the peaceful sharing of African countries amongst European countries.

European countries which scrambled for African territories.

- Great Britain
- France
- Germany
- Portugal
- Spain
- Italy
- Belgium

Reasons for scramble for Africa (Why European countries wanted colonies in Africa)

- They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.
- They wanted to invest their surplus capital.
- They wanted to find market for their processed goods.
- To get more space for resettling excess population.
- The desire for political pride.

The BERLIN CONFERENCE OF 1884

- This was a meeting in which European colonial powers discussed the partition of Africa.
- The conference was held in Berlin, Germany.
- The Berlin conference was chaired by Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck, the Prime minister of Germany by then.
- It was held purposely to find peaceful means of partitioning Africa (sharing African countries amongst European powers).



Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck

Effects of Partition of Africa.

- It led to creation of new states.
- Africans lost their independence.
- Some people lost their historical origin.
- It led to separation of communities.

✓ **Note:** *-As a result of partition of Africa, Uganda and Kenya were given to* ***Britain*** *while Tanzania, Rwanda and Burundi were given to* ***Germany.***

Examples of the early European colonialists who came to Uganda.

- Captain Frederick Lugard.
- Sir Gerald Portal.
- Sir Harry Johnston.

Methods which were used by the colonialists to establish their rule in Uganda.

- Through signing of treaties.
- Use of military force.
- They used collaborators eg. Semei Kakungulu, Nuwa Mbaguta.
- Use of trading companies eg.IBEACO.
- Through missionary work.

UGANDA UNDER THE BRITISH COLONIAL RULE.

- **Uganda was colonised by Britain.**
- **Uganda uses English as her official language because she was colonized by the British who speak English.**
- **Uganda is a member of the Commonwealth of Nations since she was colonised by the British.**
- **The British established their rule in Uganda through a trading company called IBEACO. This company was represented by by Captain Frederick Lugard.**

Captain Frederick Lugard as a representative of IBEACO in Uganda.

- **Frederick Lugard arrived in Uganda in 1890 as a representative of IBEACO.**
- **He built Fort Edward at Old Kampala hill where he raised the company's flag. (IBEACO flag).**
- **He signed an agreement with Kabaka Mwanga to bring Buganda under the control of IBEACO.This agreement was also allowing missionaries to move freely in Buganda, and also stopped Buganda from signing treaties with other European countries.**
- **He signed a treaty of friendship with Omugabe Ntare of Ankole in 1891.**



Capt. Frederick Lugard

- **He restored Omukama Kasagama of Tooro onto his throne.**
- **Lugard brought the Sudanese soldiers who had been left behind by Emin Pasha in the Equatorial province to Buganda to help him in maintaining peace.**

Note:

- ✓ *The Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny in 1897 against Capt.Lugard.*
- ✓ ***A mutiny** is a rebellion staged by armed forces against their officers.*

Why the Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny.

- *They were underpaid.*
- *They were underfed.*
- *They were tired of fighting.*
- *They wanted their living conditions to be improved.*



Bishop Alfred Tucker

- ✓ *On 31 March 1893, the IBEACO formally ended its involvement in Uganda.*
- ✓ *Missionaries, led by **Alfred Tucker,** requested the British government to take over the administration of Uganda in place of the IBEACO, arguing that British withdrawal would lead to a continuance of the religious civil war.*

Sir Gerald Portal.

- **He was sent to study the political situation in Uganda.**
- **Sir Gerald Portal was sent to Uganda to write a report on the activities of IBEACO.**
- **He raised the British flag (union Jack).**
- **He built Fort Portal in Kabarole and Fort Alice in Entebbe.**
- **He recommended Uganda to be a British Protectorate.**
- **Protectorate is a country under the protection of another country.**
- **Portal established a settlement between the French and British Missionaries in Uganda.**
- **On 1 April, 1893, Portal hauled down/ lowered the flag of the Imperial British East Africa Company at Mengo (the Kabaka's residence) and hoisted the Union Jack.**
- **On 29 May 1893, he signed a treaty with Mwanga II, the Kabaka.**

- Portal returned to Britain and recommended the declaration of Uganda as a protectorate. He died from typhoid fever in London on 25 January 1894, at the age of 36.
- On 18 June 1894, Uganda was declared a British Protectorate. In this case, it is therefore important to note that General Portal never declared Uganda as a British protectorate. The declaration was made by Lord Rosebery five months after Portal's death.
- The town of Fort Portal in Western Uganda, where Portal had his base, is named after him.



Sir Gerarl Portal

BRITISH COLONIAL ADMINISTRATORS IN UGANDA.

- Frederick Lugard (26 Dec 1890 – May 1892)
- Sir Gerald Portal (1 Apr 1893 – 30 May 1893)
- James Ronald Leslie MacDonald (30 May 1893 – 4 Nov 1893) (acting administrator)

British Commissioners of Uganda (1893–1910)

- Sir Henry Edward Colville (4 Nov 1893 – 10 May 1894)
- Frederick Jackson (10 May 1894 – 24 Aug 1894)
- Ernest James Berkeley (24 Aug 1894 – Dec 1899)
- Sir Harry Johnston (Dec 1899 – Nov 1901)
- Sir James Sadler (1 January 1902 – 20 Nov 1907)
- Sir Henry Hesketh Bell (20 Nov 1907 – 31 Jan 1910)
- Sir Harry Cordeaux (1 Feb 1910 – 18 Oct 1910)



Henry colville



Sir Harry Johnston

British Governors of Uganda (1910–1962)

- Sir Harry Cordeaux (1910–1911)
- Sir Frederick Jackson (1911–1918)
- Sir Robert Coryndon (1918–1922)
- Sir Geoffrey Archer (1922–1925)
- Sir William Gowers (1925–1932)
- Sir Bernard Henry Bourdillon (1932–1935)
- Sir Philip Mitchell (1935–1940)
- Sir Charles Dundas (1940–1945)
- Sir John Hathorn Hall (1945–1952)
- Sir Andrew Cohen (1952–1957)
- Sir Frederick Crawford (1957–1961)
- Sir Walter Coutts (1961–1962)



Sir Hesketh Bell



Sir Robert Coryndon



Sir Philip Mitchell



Sir John Hathorn Hall

- ❖ Captain Frederick Lugard.
  - ✓ He was the representative of IBEACO in Uganda.
- ❖ Colonel Henry Colville
  - ✓ He brought Bunyoro under British rule
- ❖ Sir Harry Johnston
  - ✓ He signed the 1900 Buganda agreement on behalf of the British protectorate government.
- ❖ Sir Hesketh Bell
  - ✓ He encouraged the growing of cash crops in Uganda.
  - ✓ He linked the railway line from Jinja to Namasagali.

- ✓ **He introduced the first ford car in Uganda.**
- ✓ **He encouraged road construction in Uganda.**
- ✓ **He established steamers on Lake Victoria.**

❖ **Sir Frederick Jackson**
- ✓ **He governed Uganda during the first world war**
- ✓ **The building of Mulago hospital started during his time.**
- ✓ **He stopped Lamogi rebellion**

❖ **Sir Robert Coryndon**
- ✓ **He formed the Legislative Council (LEGCO) in Uganda in 1921.**

❖ **Sir Geoffrey Archer**
- ✓ **He opened up Makerere college**
- ✓ **He promoted education by building schools**

❖ **Sir William Gowers**
- ✓ **A department of education was set up by the government during his time/ term of office.**

❖ **Sir Bernald Bourdillon**
- ✓ **He supported the establishment of more schools.**

❖ **Sir Philip Mitchell**
- ✓ **He promoted higher education in Uganda.**
- ✓ **He turned Makerere college into a university.**

❖ **Sir Charles Dundas**
- ✓ **He governed Uganda during the second world war**
- ✓ **He drew the development plan for Uganda**

❖ **Sir John Hathon Hall**
- ✓ **He stopped many riots against colonial rule in Uganda.**
- ✓ **The first three ugandans on the LEGCO were nominated during his term of office.**



Sir Andrew Cohen

❖ **Sir Andrew Cohen**
- ✓ **Owen falls dam was completed in his term of office**
- ✓ **Radio Uganda was opened during his term of office**
- ✓ **Nyanza Textile Industries Limited (NYTIL) was built during his term**
- ✓ **The construction of the parliamentary building started during his term of office.**
- ✓ **He exiled kabaka Muteesa II to Britain in 1953**

<u>Reasons why kabaka Muteesa II was exiled.</u>

❖ **He rejected the proposed East African federation.**

❖ **He demanded Buganda's independence from Uganda.**

Note:
- ➢ *Kabaka Muteesa II rejected the proposed East African Federation because he feared to lose Buganda's land to the British (White settlers)*
- ➢ *The exiling of Kabaka Muteesa II to Britain led to the Kabaka crisis of 1953 in Buganda.*
- ➢ ***The Kabaka crisis** was a time when there were many riots in Buganda against the British colonialists.*
- ➢ *In order to enable the return of the kabaka from exile, **The Namirembe Agreement of 1955** was signed.*

- *The Namirembe Agreement was signed by **Keith Hankock** on behalf of the British and **Micheal Kintu** on behalf of Buganda kingdom.*

❖ **Sir Frederick Crawford**
- ✓ **He organised the first general elections in Uganda.**
- ✓ **The construction of the parliamentary building was completed during his term of office.**
- ✓ **The government health department was set up during his term of office.**

❖ **Sir Walter Coutts**
- ✓ **He was the last British governor in Uganda**
- ✓ **He granted Uganda her independence.**



Sir Walter Coutts

Effects of the coming of the of the colonialists to Uganda.

Political effects	**Positive**	❖ **The people of Uganda learnt new leadership skills.** ❖ **The boundaries of Uganda were defined.** ❖ **New systems of administration were introduced in Uganda.**
	Negative	❖ **The people of Uganda lost their independence to the colonialists.** ❖ **The people of Uganda were denied political rights.** ❖ **Traditional leaders lost their powers.**
Social effects	**Positive**	❖ **Formal education was introduced.** ❖ **English language was introduced in different parts of Uganda.** ❖ **Many roads were built in Uganda.** ❖ **Many schools were built in Uganda.** ❖ **Hospitals were built in different parts of Uganda.**
	Negative	❖ **It led to loss of culture.**
Economic effects	**Positive**	❖ **It led to development of towns and trading centres.** ❖ **Many cash crops were introduced in Africa.** ❖ **It led to development of infrastructure like roads, industries.** ❖ **New forms of currency were introduced.**
	Negative	❖ **Heavy taxes were imposed on the people of Uganda.** ❖ **African local industries collapsed.**



Testing Exercise.

1. **Name the first group of foreigners to come to Uganda.**
2. **State the main reason for the coming of the Arab traders to Uganda.**
3. **How were the dhows useful to the easrly traders who came to Uganda?**
4. **Why is Ahmed Bin Ibrahim remembered in the history of Uganda?**
5. **How were the monsoon winds helpful to the early Arab traders to Uganda?**
6. **Which type of cattle did the Arabs introduce into Uganda?**
7. **How did the Swahili come into existence in East Africa?**
8. **State any three economic contributioins of the Arabs in Uganda.**
9. **Give any two reasons why Islam took so long to be spread in Uganda.**
10. **Mention any two ways the slaves were obtained in Uganda during the slave trade.**

11. What name is given to the group of slave traders from Egypt and Sudan who used to raid Northern Uganda?
12. Why was Sir Samuel Baker liked by the people of Acholi?
13. Mention any two steps that were taken to bring slave trade to an end.
14. What role did Dr.David Livingstone play towards ending slave trade?
15. Give any two ways slave trade negatively affected the people of East Africa.
16. State any two ways the Indians promoted economic development in Uganda.
17. Write IBEACO in full.
18. How was Sir William Mackinnon related to IBEACO?
19. Give any two reasons why IBEACO was formed.
20. Mention any two reasons why IBEACO ran bankrupt.
21. Name the Christian missionary who mobilsed funds from Europe to support the work of IBEACO in East Africa.
22. Which physical feature attracted most European explorers to Uganda?
23. Why did most early explorers who came to Uganda first go to Zanzibar?
24. Name any four famous European explorers who came to Uganda.
25. What role did the Royal Geographical Society (RGS) play towards promoting exploration work in Uganda?
26. Name the first European explorer to see each of the following features;
    (i) Lake Victoria
    (ii) The source of River Nile
    (iii) Lake Albert and Murchison falls.
    (iv) Mountain Rwenzori and lake Edward
27. Why did Henry Morton Stanley perform his second journey to Africa?
28. How did H.M Stanley prove that lake Victoria was the source of river Nile?
29. State any three problems that were faced by the early European explorers in Uganda.
30. Give any two reasons why kabaka Muteesa I invited Christian missionaries to Buganda.
31. How did Kenneth Borup promote economic development in Uganda?
32. Name the organisation which funded most protestant missionaries to Uganda?
33. Give any one way the printing press which was introduced by Alexander Mackay was helpful to the missionaries in Uganda.
34. Name the Muganda missionary who spread Christianity in Tooro and Eastern parts of DRC.
35. Give two ways Dr. Albert Cook promoted the development of the health sector in Uganda.
36. State any four positive contributions of the Christian missionaries in Uganda.
37. Give one way the coming of the Christian missionaries paved way for colonization of Uganda.
38. Name the place where most of the Uganda martyrs met their death.
39. Which African country attempted to colonise Uganda?
40. How did Sir Samuel Baker help to end slave trade in Northern Uganda?
41. Give any two reasons for the coming of the colonialisdts to Uganda.
42. Mention any two methods the British colonialists used to establish their rule in Uganda.
43. Mention any two systems of administration that were used by the British colonialists in Uganda.
44. Name the British official who recommended Uganda to be a British protectorate.
45. Give any two ways Semei Kakungulu promoted development in Eastern Uganda.
46. Name any three colonial collaborators in Uganda.
47. Give any two ways Sir Hesketh Bell promoted development in Uganda.
48. Why was Sir Edward Muteesa II exiled to Britain by Sir Andrew Cohen?
49. Name the last colonial governor in Uganda.
50. How did Sir Philip Mitchell promote higher education in Uganda?

TOPIC 8: HOW UGANDA BECAME A NATION.

- **A nation is a group of people with the same historical background living in the same area under one government**

Types of nations

- **Heterogeneous nation.**
- **Monolithic nation.**

- **Heterogenous nations are nations where people speak different languages and have different cultures.**
- **Such nations find it difficult to have a have national language. This is because they are multi-lingual.**
- **Uganda is a multilingual nation/ Heterogeneous nation.**
- **Uganda has no national language because she has many tribes which speak different languages.**
- **A Monolithic nation is a type of a nation where almost all people speak the same language and have the same cultures eg Rwanda.**

COLONIAL AGREEMENTS WHICH WERE SIGNED TO MAKE UGANDA A NATION

- **The 1894 protectorate treaty.**
- **The 1900 Buganda Agreement.**
- **The 1900 Tooro Agreement.**
- **The 1901 Ankole Agreement.**
- **The Bunyoro Agreement of 1933.**

(i) The 1894 Protectorate treaty

- **It was the first colonial agreement to be signed in Uganda.**
- **It was signed between kabaka Mwanga and Sir Gerald Portal.**
- **It was known as the protectorate treaty because the British agreed to protectorate Buganda and the entire Uganda from other colonial powers.**

(ii) The 1900 Buganda Agreement

- **The 1900 Buganda Agreement was signed between Buganda kingdom and the British protectorate government**
- **It was signed to strengthen British Authority over Buganda kingdom**
- **By the time this agreement was signed, Kabaka Daudi Chwa II was the king but was still an infant**
- **By the time of the Buganda Agreement, Kabaka Mwanga had been exiled by the British to Seychelles island in Indian ocean.**

Signatories of the 1900 Buganda agreement.

- **Sir Harry Johnston (on behalf of the British Protectorate government).**
- **Sir Apollo Kaggwa (on behalf of Buganda kingdom).**

Note:

- ***Kabaka Mwanga*** *was unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement because he was in exile*
- ***Kabaka Daudi Chwa II*** *was unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement because he was still an infant/ young*
- *Kabaka Daudi Chwa ruled Buganda with the help of the regents.*
- ***A Regent*** *is a person who is appointed to rule on behalf of an infant king.*

Regents of Kabaka Daudi Chwa.

- *Sir Apollo Kaggwa*
- *Stanslas Mugwanya*
- *Zakaria Kisingiri*

Terms of the 1900 Buganda Agreement

- **Land**
- **Governance**
- **Taxation**

Recommendations of the 1900 Buganda Agreement.

- **Gun and hut taxes were to be introduced.**
- **Buganda land was to be divided into crown land and mailo land.**
- **Kabaka's powers were to be reduced and added to the lukiiko.**
- **Kabaka's title of His Majesty was to be changed to His Highness.**
- **Buganda kingdom was to be enlarged and divided into 20 counties.**
- **The number of members on the Lukiiko was to be increased.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Mailo land*** *was given to the kabaka and his chiefs while* ***crown land*** *was given to the British protectorate government.*
  Why the British colonialists had to be given the crown land.
- ✓ *To get land for building schools, hospitals, churches, administrative offices etc.*

Effects of the 1900 Buganda Agreement

- **Gun and hut taxes were introduced**
- **Buganda land was divided into crown land and mailo land**
- **Kabaka's powers were reduced and given to the lukiiko**
- **Kabaka's title of His Majesty was changed to His Highness**
- **Buganda kingdom was enlarged and divided into 20 counties**
- **The number of members on the Lukiiko was increased.**

(iii) Tooro Agreement of 1900

- **The Agreement was signed between omukama Kasagama of Tooro and Sir Gerald Portal on behalf of the British.**
- **This Agreement made Tooro a British protectorate.**
- **The agreement led to the introduction of hut and gun taxes in Tooro land**

Effects of the 1900 Tooro Agreement.

- **Hut and gun taxes were introduced.**
- **Crown land was set aside and become part of the British government.**
- **Tooro became part of Buganda protectorate.**
- **Tooro was officially separated from Bunyoro.**
- **Omukama was recognised as the traditional ruler of Tooro.**
- **Tooro boundaries were defined and demarcated.**

(iv) Bunyoro Agreement of 1933

- **It was signed between Sir Bernard Henry Bourdillon on behalf of the British protectorate government and Omukama Tito Gafabusa Winyi II.**
- **It was signed to strengthen British rule in Bunyoro region.**

(v) The 1901 Ankole Agreement

- **It was signed between Omugabe Kahaya of Ankole and Sir Fredrick Jackson on behalf of the British**
- **In this agreement, hut and gun taxes were introduced.**
- **The counties of Igara, Kajara, Bahweju, and Bunyaruguru were taken away from Bunyoro and added to Ankole**

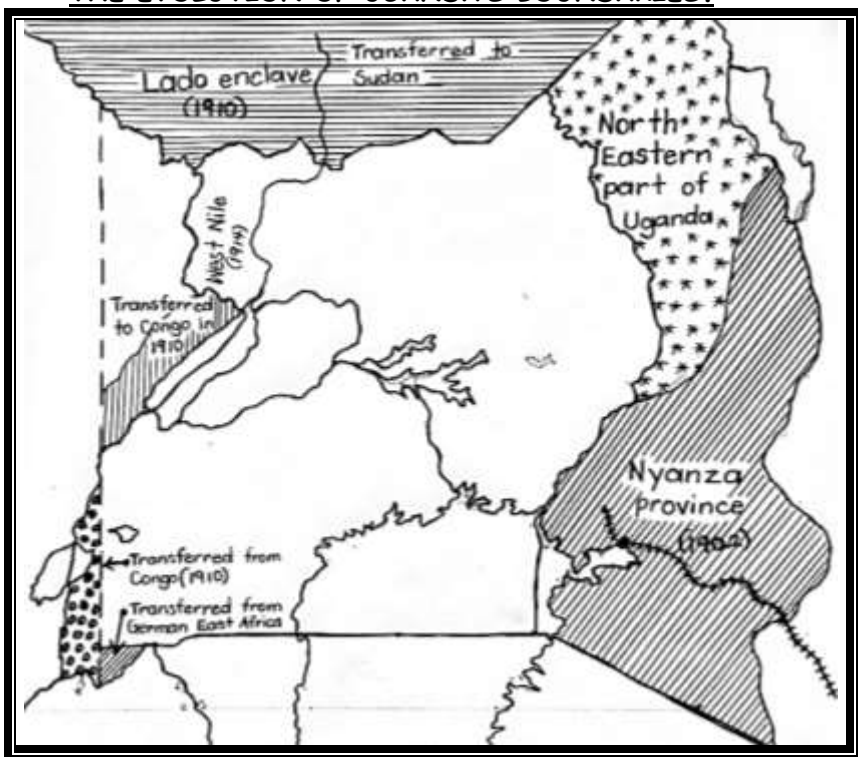
Effects of the 1901 Ankole Agreement

- Ankole kingdom was enlarged. eg Buhweju, Igara, Kajara and Bunyaruguru were added to it.
- Hut and gun taxes were introduced.
- Ankole became part of Uganda protectorate

EVOLUTION OF UGANDA'S BOUNDARIES

- During the fixing of Uganda's boundaries, some parts/ places of other countries were added to Uganda and others were taken away from Uganda.
- At one time, Uganda extended from the Western rift valley to the Eastern rift valley.
- The area became a British protectorate in 1894.
- The modern boundaries of Uganda took shape through changes that ran from 1890 to 1926.
- The name of Uganda was derived from the ancient kingdom of Buganda.

THE EVOLUTION OF UGANDA'S BOUNDARIES.



Nyanza province:

- It was transferred from Uganda to Kenya in 1902
- It was transferred to bring the Uganda railway under one administration
- The British wanted to put the Nandi and the Masai under one government to be controlled easily.

West Nile

- It was transferred from Belgian Congo (D.R.C) to Uganda in 1914.
- The British wanted to have full control over the flow of River Nile.

Lado enclave

- It was transferred to South Sudan in 1910
- It was transferred to separate the Sudanese from the Acholi in order to control resistance against colonial rule.

The North Eastern part of Uganda

- **It was transferred from Uganda to Kenya in 1914.**
- **It was transferred to separate the Karimojongs from the Turkana in order to control cattle rustling.**

The Western part of Uganda.

- **The area near Lake Albert was transferred to Belgian Congo in 1910 while the area near lake Edward was given to Uganda.**
- **The area near lake Edward was transferred to Uganda in 1910.**

Note:- *They wanted to use the Western rift valley to create a natural boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.*

Examples of physical features that were used when fixing of Uganda's boundaries

- **Lakes Albert and Edward and the Western Riftvalley along the border of Uganda and DRC.**
- **River Semliki along the border of Uganda and DRC.**
- **River Kagera along the border of Uganda and Tanzania.**
- **Mountain Elgon along the border of uganda and Kenya.**

Note:- *These features are used because they are permanently fixed.*

Effects of the fixing of Uganda's boundaries.

- **Some people lost their historical origin.**
- **Some natives were separated from their relatives.**
- **Some tribes and communities were split up/ separated. eg. The Sabiny are found in both Uganda and Kenya.**
- **The fixing of boundaries helped to give Uganda a name,shape and size.**

COLONIAL ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEMS USED BY THE BRITISH IN UGANDA

- **The colonialists mainly used two methods to rule the natives.**

These were;

- **Direct rule**
- **Indirect rule**

i) DIRECT RULE

- **This was the system of administration where the colonialists ruled the natives directly by themselves.**

For example; by the German colonialists in Tanganyika.

Reasons why Direct rule was used.

- **The colonialists wanted to promote their culture.**
- **They wanted to show their superiority over the Africans.**
- **They wanted to exploit resources of their countries of control.**

Effects of Direct rule

a) On the Africans

- **Local leaders lost their powers.**
- **It led to over exploitation of Africa's resources.**
- **It limited the provision of social services.**
- **It was harsh and oppressive to the natives.**

b) On the Colonialists.

- **It increased rebellions against colonial rule.**
- **It increased colonial expenditure.**
- **It promoted hatred towards the colonialists.**
- **It made it very difficult for some colonial policies to be implemented.**

ii) INDIRECT RULE.

- This was the system of administration where local leaders were used to rule the natives on behalf of the colonialists.
- Indirect rule was introduced in Uganda by Capt.Frederick Lugard.
- Local leaders encouraged and supervised the growing of cash crops and collected taxes on behalf of the colonialists.
- This system of administration was mainly used by the British in Uganda.

Reasons why the colonialists used Indirect rule.

- To control rebellions against colonial rule.
- It was cheap in terms of paying local leaders.
- They wanted to increase manpower for the colonialists.
- They wanted to ease communication with their subjects.

Advantages of Indirect rule.

a) To the Africans.

- Local leaders learnt new methods of administration.
- It preserved the cultural practices of the natives.
- Kingdoms and chiefdoms were retained.

b) To the Colonialists.

- It was cheap to pay local leaders.
- It reduced rebellions against colonial rule.
- It made communication between the natives and the colonialists easy.

Disadvantages of Indirect rule.

- The natives hated their local leaders.
- It caused divisions among the natives.
- Native leaders were used as puppets by the colonialists.

EFFECTS OF COLONIAL RULE

(a) Economic effects of colonial rule in Uganda.

Positive effects

- Roads were constructed.
- Hospitals were built in Uganda.
- Schools were built.
- Good means of transport were introduced.
- Cash crops were introduced in Uganda.
- Office jobs were started.
- Processed goods were introduced
- It led to introduction of taxes.

Negative effects.

- Local technology was undermined
- It led to over exploitation of resources
- Some natives lost their land.

(b) Social effects of colonial rule in Uganda.

Positive effects

- Modern clothes were introduced
- Modern drugs were introduced in Uganda.
- Modern styles of building were started.
- Modern domestic facilities were introduced.
- English as a new language was introduced.
- Formal education was introduced.

Negative effects

- Christianity undermined traditional African religions.
- It led to segregation of people
- The natives were denied from their rights.
- Africans were not respected.

(c) Political effects colonial rule in Uganda.

Positive effects

- Modern systems of administration were introduced.

- **Native leaders learnt leadership skills.**
- **It led to introduction of modern laws.**
- **Formation of Uganda as a nation.**

<u>Negative effects.</u>

- **It led to loss of independence by the natives.**
- **It led to introduction of foreign unfriendly laws.**
- **Native leaders lost their powers.**

Note:- *The colonial government in Uganda had its capital at* ***Entebbe.***



Testing Exercise.

1. **What is a Nation?**
2. **Mention the types of nations.**
3. **Why does Uganda have no unifying national language?**
4. **mention any three treaties that were signed to put different parts of Uganda under colonial rule.**
5. **mention the three regents of Kabaka Daudi Chwa.**
6. **Why was kabaka Daudi Chwa unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement?**
7. **Why was kabaka Mwanga not able to sign the Buganda agreement of 1900?**
8. **Who signed the 1900 Buganda agreement on behalf of;**
   (i) Buganda kingdom?
   (ii) The British protectorate government?
9. **Mention the three main terms of the 1900 Buganda agreement.**
10. **State any three effects of the 1900 Buganda agreement.**
11. **Mention the two forms of taxes that were introduced in Uganda during colonial rule.**
12. **Name the special land that was given to the British protectorate during the signing of the 1900 Tooro agreement.**
13. **Give one way Semei Kakungulu was helpful to the British colonialists in Uganda.**
14. **Name the main physical feature that was used by the colonialists to create a boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.**
15. **Apart from the above feature, mention any three other physical features that form a natural boundary between Uganda and DRC.**
16. **Why was the West Nile transferred to Uganda by the British colonialists?**
17. **Give one reason why the Nyanza province was transferred from Uganda to Kenya during the evolution of Uganda's boundaries.**
18. **Why was the Lado enclave transferred from Uganda to Sudan when fixing Uganda's boundaries?**
19. **State any two ways the evolution of Uganda's boundaries affected the people of Uganda.**
20. **Name the country to which the West Nile belonged before it was transferred to Uganda.**
21. **Mention two methods of administration the British used in Uganda.**
22. **Which method of administration did the British use in most parts of Uganda?**
23. **Give the meaning of "Indirect rule" as used during colonial rule.**
24. **Give any two ways indirect rule was practised in Uganda.**
25. **State any two reasons why the British colonialists chose to indirect rule in Uganda.**
26. **Give any two ays the British benefited from using Indirect rule.**
27. **Where were the administrative offices established in Uganda during colonial rule?**
28. **Give any three positive effects of the colonialists in Uganda.**
29. **Which type of education was introduced by the British colonialists in Uganda?**
30. **State any three political contributions of the British colonialists in Uganda.**

TOPIC 9: THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE IN UGANDA.

- **Independence is the state of being free from social, political and economic oppression.**
- **National independence is the state when a country is free from control of another country.**

Characteristics of colonial rule.

- **Foreign laws were introduced. eg.registration of births and deaths, provision of free forced labour, payment of 3 rupees per hut and 10 shillings from each owner of a gun annually.**
- **There was forced labour (compulsory labour)**
- **Changes were made in the colonial economy**
- **There was segregation of people.**
- **Introduction of heavy taxes.Hut and gun taxes were introduced during colonial rule.**
- **Introduction of cash crops.eg cotton.**
- **Introduction of foreign languages.**

Why the colonialists introduced the growing of cash crops.

- **They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries**
- **They wanted the natives to get money for paying tax.**

Why people failed to pay taxes that were introduced during colonial rule.

- **Some people did not have reliable sources of income.**
- **The taxes were so high.**

Ways Ugandans were mistreated during colonial rule.

- **They were subjected to compulsory work**
- **They were over taxed.**
- **They were segregated.**
- **They were underpaid.**
- **They were imprisoned without court trial**
- **Some people were displaced from their land.**

How the Ugandan natives reacted to the colonial legal systems of administration.

- **They staged rebellions.**
- **They staged riots.**
- **They formed demonstrations.**
- **They formed associations.**

Note:

- ✓ *Ignatius Kangave Musaazi formed the* ***Uganda Farmers' Association*** *in 1946 to demand for better prices of cash crops, and also to allow the Ugandans process and export their own cash crops.*
- ✓ *Bataka party led by James Miti staged riots in Buganda in 1946.*

  Why the Bataka party and the Farmers' Union staged riots in 1949.
  - *They wanted the foreign laws to favour all people.*
  - *They wanted to restore the powers of the kabaka.*
  - *They wanted power to choose their own government in Buganda.*
  - *To demand for better cotton prices.*
  - *They wanted to export their own cash crops.*
  - *They wanted land to be returned to the clan leaders.*

REACTION TO COLONIAL RULE IN UGANDA

Ways Ugandans reacted towards the colonial rule.

- **Some people of Uganda collaborated with the colonialists eg.Apollo Kaggwa, Semei Kakungulu, Nuwa Mbaguta etc.**

- ❖ Others resisted against colonial rule.eg. Kabaka Mwanga, Omukama Kabalega, Chief Awich etc.

COLONIAL COLLABORATORS IN UGANDA.

- This refers to the peaceful ways through which the individuals cooperated with the British.
- Collaborators were the Ugandan natives who helped the colonialists in establishing their rule in different parts of Uganda.

Reasons why some Ugandan natives collaborated with the colonialists.

- ❖ They wanted to get favour from the colonialists.
- ❖ Kings and chiefs wanted to get military support.
- ❖ Some wanted to enrich themselves.
- ❖ Some feared the military strength of the colonialists.

Roles played by the collaborators.

- ❖ They helped in signing colonial agreements.
- ❖ They helped in enforcing colonial policies.
- ❖ They acted as interpreters for the colonialists.
- ❖ They provided information to the colonialists.

People who collaborated with the British.

- Semei Kakungulu.
- Nuwa Mbaguta.
- Sir Apollo Kaggwa.
- Omukama Kasagama.

			
Semei Kakungulu	*Nuwa Mbaguta*	*Sir Apollo Kaggwa*	*Omukama Kasagama*

SEMEI KAKUNGULU.

- Semei Kakungulu brought the Eastern parts of Uganda under colonial rule.
- He introduced the Buganda system of administration in Eastern Uganda.
- He encouraged cash crop growing in Eastern Uganda. This helped to increase household income of the people of Eastern Uganda.
- He encouraged the people of Eastern Uganda to plant trees (Mvule trees).
- He constructed roads in Eastern Uganda which helped to ease British administration.
- He appointed Buganda agents to become chiefs in Eastern and Northern Uganda.
- He helped the British to capture Kabaka Mwanga and Omukama Kabalega in Lango and were exiled to Seychelles islands.
  - ➢ ***Note***:-*Semei Kakungulu tried to extend British rule in North Eastern Uganda (Karamoja) but he failed. This was because the people in North Eastern Uganda were hostile. The British also never had interest in the dry area of Karamoja since it couldn't favour crop growing.*

Ways Semei kakungulu managed to establish British rule in Eastern Uganda

- ❖ He built roads in Eastern Uganda
- ❖ He built administrative posts in Eastern Uganda
- ❖ He signed treaties with the local chiefs

NUWA MBAGUTA

- He was the Prime minister of Ankole.
- He extended British rule in Western Uganda
- He encouraged the building of feeder roads in Ankole.
- He planted trees in Ankole and educated people on their importance.
- He fought against illiteracy by supporting the building of schools in Ankole

COLONIAL RESISTERS IN UGANDA.

- Resisters were the Ugandan natives who opposed colonial rule.

Ways the Ugandan resisted against colonial rule.

- Through staging rebellions.
- Through forming boycotts.
- Through forming riots and demonstrations.
- Through forming trade unions.

Examples of colonial resisters in Uganda.

- Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro.
- Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda.
- Chief Awich of Payera in Acholi.

Ugandan communities that strongly resisted against colonial rule.

- Banyoro of Uganda
- Acholi of Uganda.

Causes for the resistance against British colonial rule in Uganda.

- Colonial rule was harsh and oppressive to the people of Uganda.
- Loss of powers by kings and chiefs.
- Loss of fertile land by the natives.
- Acquisition of military skills from world wars.
- Denial of the natives equal representation on the LEGCO.
- Imprisonment of the Ugandan nationalists.

Reasons why resistance against the colonial rule in Uganda was defeated/unsuccessful.

- The natives had inferior weapons.
- Disunity among the people of Uganda.
- The natives never had strong standing armies.
- The colonialists had better fighting skills.

REBELLIONS AGAINST BRITISH COLONIAL RULE IN UGANDA.

- A rebellion is an occasion when people choose to fight those in authority.
- It is a violent act staged by many people in a country against unlawful acts by the government.
- Rebellions against colonial rule were led by the African natives who had acquired education and military skills.

Examples of rebellions staged in Uganda against colonial rule.

- Nyangire rebellion in Bunyoro
- Lamogi rebellion in Acholi
- Mwanga's rebellion in Buganda
- The Sudanese mutiny

NYANGIRE REBELLION (1907)

- **Nyangire means I have refused**
- **It was staged by the Banyoro and led by Omukama Kabalega**
- **The main cause was "The Banyoro never wanted to be ruled by the Baganda chiefs who were the agents of the British.**
- **These Baganda chiefs were collaborating with the British.**

Note:

- ✓ *On 9th April,1899, Kabalega was captured by the British together Mwanga of Buganda.*
- ✓ *Both of them were exiled to* ***Seychelles islands.***
- ✓ *Kabalega spent 24 years in exile. He was given permission to return to Bunyoro in 1923 but died in Jinja on April 6th, 1923.*
- ✓ *Mwanga died from exile in 1903.*

THE LAMOGI REBELLION

- **It was staged between 1911-1912 by the people of the Acholi against the British**
- **It was led by chief Awich of Payera in Acholi land.**
- **The main cause was forced gun registration policy by the British.**
- **The British wanted the people of Acholi to register their guns and pay taxes for them.**
- **It was a tactical way of disarming the Acholi.**
- **The Acholi were later defeated and disarmed.**

THE SUDANESE MUTINY

- **A mutiny is a rebellion staged by members of an armed force against their officers.**
- **The Sudanese Mutiny was staged in 1897-1878 by the Sudanese soldiers against the British.**
- **These soldiers were stationed at Eldama Ravine in the present day Kenya complained of little pay and delayed salaries.**
- **They marched towards Kampala, killing and looting as they went.**
- **The rebellion came to end with the help of Sir Apollo Kaggwa.**

Why the Sudanese soldiers staged a mutiny.

- ❖ **They were underpaid.**
- ❖ **They were underfed.**
- ❖ **They were tired of fighting.**
- ❖ **They wanted their living conditions to be improved.**

Effects of rebellions against colonial rule in Uganda.

- ❖ **They led to death of people.**
- ❖ **They led to displacement of people.**
- ❖ **They led to destruction of property.**
- ❖ **Some traditional leaders were exiled.**
- ❖ **They brought suffering and misery to the natives.**
- ❖ **They promoted African nationalism.**
- ❖ **They helped to protect the natives from oppression.**

THE FORMATION OF THE LEGISLATIVE COUNCIL (LEGCO) IN UGANDA

- **LEGCO was a law making body during colonial rule.**

- **LEGCO served as the parliament during the colonial times.**
- **LEGCO was formed in 1921 during the time when Sir Robert Corydon was the British governor in Uganda.**
- **The idea of forming LEGCO came from European businessmen and farmers living in Uganda**

Reasons for the formation of LEGCO

- **To make laws.**
- **To advise the colonial government.**
- **To get information from various regions of Uganda.**

Note:

- ✓ *Ugandans had no representative on the LEGCO until 1945.*
- ✓ *When* ***Sir John Hathorn Hall*** *the British governor by the time the first Ugandan natives were nominated on the LEGCO.*
- ✓ *The natives were not happy with the LEGCO in 1921 because they were not represented on the LEGCO at all.*
- ✓ *The LEGCO used to set laws as the parliament of today does.*

The first three Ugandans to be nominated on the LEGCO (in 1945)

- **Kawalya Kaggwa from Buganda representing the Central region**
- **Yekonia Zirabamuzaale from Busoga representing the Eastern region**
- **Petero Nyangabyaki Akiiki from Bunyoro representing the Eastern Uganda.**

Note:*-In 1946,* ***Yekosofati Innyon*** *was nominated to represent the Northern region on the LEGCO in Uganda.*

Ways LEGCO helped Ugandans to demand for independence.

- **It gave the natives courage to air out their complaints.**
- **Native members on LEGCO encouraged their members to form associations.**
- **It encouraged the natives to demand for self rule.**
- **It laid a strong foundation for native leadership.**

Note:

- ✓ ***John V. Wild*** *was appointed as the chairperson of the* ***Wild Constitutional Committee*** *which was formed to find means of making members on the LEGCO directly elected by people.*
- ✓ *The committee was formed by* ***Sir Fredrick Crawford*** *in 1956.*
- ✓ *The committee recommended that there should be direct elections in all parts of the country based on a voters' register.*
- ✓ *It also recommended that the LEGCO would be called the* ***National assembly.***
- ✓ *The first elections were held in 1958.*
- ✓ ***Pumla Kisosonkole*** *became the first Ugandan woman on the LEGCO in 1957.*

Role played by the LEGCO towards Uganda's independence.

- ✓ *It gave Ugandans a chance to discuss matters that affected them.*
- ✓ *It was a platform for the Ugandans to demand for their independence from the colonialists.*

THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN UGANDA.

- **The struggle for independence in Uganda was in two forms.**

These were;

i) Peaceful struggle.

ii) Armed struggle.

- **Peaceful struggle** is when people of Uganda used non-violent means to demand for independence.
- It was mainly used in Uganda.

Methods used by the people of Uganda to demand for independence.

-Formation of political parties.
-Formation of boycotts.
-Through forming trade unions. These mobilised people to demonstrate or even boycott buying European goods.
-Through peaceful demonstrations.
-Through open rallies.

Note:

- ✓ ***Armed struggle*** *is when the Africans used violent means/ fire arms to demand for their independence.*
- ✓ *It was mainly used by the natives of Kenya.*

FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN UGANDA

- A political party is an organisation comprising of people with the same political ideologies and goals.
- Political parties were mainly formed in 1950s to demand for Uganda's independence.
- Political parties united people in their struggle for independence.

Why political parties were formed during colonial rule.

- ❖ To unite people in their struggle for independence.
- ❖ To deal with common problems affecting people.
- ❖ To protest harsh government laws and policies.
- ❖ To advise the government.

Examples of political parties that were formed in Uganda before independence

- Uganda National Congress (UNC)
- Uganda People's Congress (UPC)
- Democratic Party (DP)
- Kabaka Yekka (KY)
- United Congress Party (UCP)

(i) **The Uganda National Congress (UNC)**

- It was the first political party to be formed in Uganda
- It was formed by Ignatius Kangave Musaazi and Abu-baker Kakyama Mayanja in 1952

Objectives of UNC

- ➢ To struggle for Uganda's independence
- ➢ To unite all Ugandans for a common goal.
- ➢ To promote democracy in Uganda
- ➢ To promote the economy in the interests of Uganda.

Challenges faced by UNC

- ➢ It faced a strong opposition from the Lukiiko
- ➢ Internal problems by party leaders.



Ignatius Kangave Musaazi

(ii) **United Congress Party.**

- ➢ It was led by David Lubega.
- ➢ It support traditional rulers and supported a federal system of government.

(iii)Uganda People's Union (UPU)

- **It was formed in 1959 by the members of the LEGCO representing various districts outside Buganda.**
- **It was led by Wilberforce Nadiope.**

(iv) Democratic Party (DP).

- **It was formed by Joseph Kasolo in 1954.**
- **Joseph Kasolo was the first leader of DP and later was replaced by Matayo Mugwanya in 1956.**
- **Matayo Mugwanya was replaced by Benedicto Kiwanuka in 1958.**
- **DP was mainly for Catholics.**
- **In 1961, General elections were held and DP won the elections followed by UPC.**
- **This made Benedicto Kiwanuka who was the leader of DP by then become the first Chief Minister of Uganda.**



Benedicto Kiwanuka

Reasons for the formation on DP.

- **To demand for Uganda's independence.**
- **To protect the rights of the Catholics mainly in the government.**

Uganda People's Congress (UPC)

- **It was formed on March 10th 1960 and Dr. Milton Obote was chosen to be its leader.**
- **UPC was formed by splinter members of UNC and UPU.**
- **It made an alliance with Kabaka Yekka party and won the 1962 general elections leading Uganda to independence.**
- **Its main objective was to lead Uganda to independence.**



Dr. Apollo Milton Obote

Kabaka Yekka (KY).

- **It was formed by Simeon Masembe and Augustine Kamya who were the members of Buganda Lukiiko.**

Objectives of Kabaka Yekka.

- **To defend the Kabaka and his Kingdom.**
- **To promote the interests of Buganda and the Kabaka in the politics of Uganda.**

Note:

- ✓ ***KY*** *made an alliance with* ***UPC*** *which gave UPC more strength to win* ***DP*** *in the 1962 general elections.*
- ✓ ***An Alliance*** *refers to uniting of people, states or parties to achieve a common goal.*

Current political parties in Uganda.

- **National Resistance Movement (NRM).**
- **Democratic Party (DP).**
- **Forum for Democratic Change (FDC).**
- **Uganda People's Congress (UPC).**
- **Conservative Party (CP).**

- **People's Progressive Party (PPP)**
- **People's Development Party (PDP)**

INFLUENCE OF WORLD WARS ON UGANDA'S INDEPENDENCE.

The First World War (World War I)

- ✓ **At the beginning of the 20th century, Germany under Kaiser William II had the ambition to conquer and control the whole world.**
- ✓ **France, Russia and Britain prepared to defend themselves.**
- ✓ **On 28th June, 1914, Franz Ferdinand, the crown prince of Austria and his wife Sophie, were killed by a Serbian student called Gavrilo Principe in Serbia.**
- ✓ **Austria, an ally to Germany declared a war on Serbia.**
- ✓ **Russia and France prepared to fight alongside Serbia and in return, Germany declared a war on both Russia and France.**
- ✓ **Britain also decided to side with Russia and France.**
- ✓ **The war lasted from 1914-1918 and Germany was eventually defeated.**

Note;

- ➢ *European countries formed the **League of Nations** in 1919 to prevent outbreak of the Second World War.*
- ➢ *The League of Nations took away all colonies that belonged to Germany as a punishment that was given to Germany for causing the First World War.*

The Second World War (World War II).

- ✓ **Adolf Hitler became the leader of Germany in 1933 and formed a party of the Nazis (his supporters).**
- ✓ **Hitler's aim was to make Germany regain her former glory.**
- ✓ **Hitler allied with Mussolini of Italy whose supporters were called the Facists.**
- ✓ **On 1st September, 1939, Hitler attacked Poland.**
- ✓ **On 28th June, 1941, Britain and France declared a war on Germany and Italy.**
- ✓ **The war lasted for 6 years and ended in 1945 causing death to millions of people, destruction of property and displacement of people.**
- ✓ **Ugandans were involved in the war because their colonial masters took men to work as soldiers and porters in the war zones.**
  - ➢ **Note:-*The United Nations*** *(UN) was formed in 1945 to create everlasting peace in the world.*

Effects of World wars on the people of Uganda.

- ❖ **It led to death of people.**
- ❖ **It led to poverty among the people of Uganda.**
- ❖ **The prices of cash crops (cotton and coffee) reduced.**
- ❖ **It sped up the independence process in Uganda.**

Influence of World wars on Uganda's independence.

- ❖ **Ugandans who went to fight (war veterans) learnt military skills.**
- ❖ **Ugandans who went to fight got the courage of fighting for their freedom.**
- ❖ **Ugandans learnt that whites could be fought and defeated.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Nationalism*** *is the feeling of love for and pride in one's country.*
- ✓ ***A nationalist*** *is a person who has strong feeling of love for his / her country.*
- ✓ ***Patriotism*** *is the feeling of love for one's country and willingness to defend it.*
- ✓ *Famous nationalists in Uganda included; Dr.Apollo Milton Obote, Benedicto Kiwanuka, Sir Edward Muteesa II etc.*

✓ *Nationalists led the struggle for independence in Uganda.*

Reasons why the Ugandan natives demanded for independence.

a) Economic reasons.

- ❖ They wanted to regain their lost land.
- ❖ They wanted to be free from unfair colonial policies.like paying heavy taxes.
- ❖ They wanted to have control over their natural resources.

b) Political reasons.

- ❖ They wanted to participate in choosing their own leaders.
- ❖ Traditional leaders wanted to regain their lost powers.
- ❖ They wanted to have equal representations on the Legislative council (LEGCO).

c) Social reasons

- ❖ They wanted to end racial segregation by the Whites.
- ❖ They wanted to revive African culture.
- ❖ They wanted to be free from forced labour.
- ❖ They wanted to have their rights respected by the Whites.

Problems the people of Uganda faced during their struggle for independence.

- ❖ Some of them were imprisoned.
- ❖ Some of them were murdered.
- ❖ Some had their movements restricted to particular places.
- ❖ Disunity among all people in Uganda.
- ❖ Some of them were sent into exile. For example -Sir Edward Muteesa II who was exiled to Britain in 1953 by Sir Andrew Cohen.

UGANDA GAINS HER INDEPENDENCE.

- **The 1961 General elections.**
  - Democratic Party (DP), Uganda People's Congress (UPC) and Uganda National Congress (UNC) took part in these elections.
  - DP won with 43 seats in the National Assembly, followed by UPC with 35 while UNC got only 1 seat.
  - Benedicto Kiwanuka became the first chief minister and leader of government business because his party won the1961 general elections.
- **The 1961 London conference at Lancaster house.**
- The Conference was started on 18 September 1961 and concluded on 9 October.
- The Lancaster house conference was held in London to plan for Uganda's independence and agree on the constitution of Uganda.
- The conference was attended by colonial administrators led by Sir Frederick Crawford, officials from Buganda, Bunyoro and other members from UPC, DP and others.
- The recommendations of the conference resulted in the Buganda Agreement of 1961, replacing the Namirembe Agreement of 1955, as well as the first Ugandan Constitution.

Recommendations of the 1961 London conference.

- **Prime minister was the title to be given to the head of government in uganda.**
- **Traditional rulers would retain their positions and privileges.**
- **The lost counties of Bunyoro were to be settled by a referendum.**
- **General elections would be held before Uganda becomes independent.**

- **The 1962 General elections.**
- **General elections were held in Uganda on 25 April 1962 in preparation for independence on 9 October.**
- **However, elections were not held in all parts of the country, with the Parliament of Buganda nominating 21 members (all of whom belonged to the Kabaka Yekka party) to the national parliament.**
- **The result was a victory for the Uganda People's Congress which made an alliance with KY won 37 of the 82 seats.**
- **UPC led Uganda to independence.**

Results of the 1962 general elections.

Political Party	*Votes*	*Percentage*	*Number of seats*	*Difference (in relation to 1961 elections)*
❖ ***Ugandan People's Congress***	***545,324***	***51.8%***	***37***	***+2***
❖ ***Democratic Party***	***484,324***	***46.1%***	***24***	***−19***
❖ ***Uganda National Congress***	***2,565***	***0.2%***	***0***	***−1***
❖ ***Bataga Party of Busoga***	***2,375***	***0.2%***	***0***	***New***
❖ ***Uganda National Union***	***39***	***0.0%***	***0***	***New***
❖ ***Independents***	***17,308***	***1.6%***	***0***	***−2***
❖ ***Kabaka Yekka***	–	–	***21***	***New***
Total	1,052,544	100%	82	0
Registered voters/turnout	1,553,233	67.7%	–	–

Note:

- ✓ *On **9th October,1962**, Uganda was granted independence by **Sir Walter Coutts** who was a British governor of Uganda by then.*
- ✓ ***Obote** became the first executive prime minister of Uganda.*
- ✓ ***Sir Edward Muteesa II** was the first non-executive president of Uganda.*
- ✓ *The national celebration of Uganda's independence took place at Kololo Heroes' ground.*
- ✓ *The British flag (Union jack) was lowered as the British anthem (God save the Queen) was being played, and the Uganda national flag was raised for its first time as the Uganda national anthem was being played.*
- ✓ *The Uganda national flag was raised for its first time by **Maj. Akorimo Kanuti.***
- ✓ *Dr.Apollo Milton Obote received the **instruments of power** from **Prince Edward George Nicholas the Duke of Kent** who had represented the Queen of England. These included the national constitution, national flag, a dummy key to state house and the national coat of arms.*

- ✓ ***Self government*** *is when the citizens of a country are in charge of the central government administration but under protection of another powerful country.*
- ✓ *Uganda gained self government in 1962.*
- ✓ *The leader of Uganda after independence was called* ***Executive Prime Minister****.*



Testing Exercise.

1. **Give the meaning of the term Independence.**
2. **State any three characterictics of colonial administrative systems.**
3. **Give two ways the people of Uganda reacted towards colonial rule.**
4. **Why did the British colonialists encourage toe people of Uganda to grow cash crops?**
5. **State any two ways the people of Uganda were mistreated during colonial rule.**
6. **Name any two colonial resisters in Uganda.**
7. **Mention any two tribes in Uganda whose leaders resisted against colonial rule.**
8. **Give any two reasons why resistance against the colonialists in Uganda was unsuccessful.**
9. **State any two reasons why the people of Uganda resisted against colonial rule.**
10. **Mention any rebellions that were staged against the British rule in Uganda.**
11. **Give any two ways the above rebellions affected the people of Uganda.**
12. **State the major cause of the Lamogi rebellion in Northern Uganda.**
13. **Why is Seychelles Islands historically remembered in Buganda and Bunyoro?**
14. **Write LEGCO in full**
15. **State any two reasons for the formation of the LEGCO in Uganda.**
16. **Name the British governor of Uganda who formed the first LEGCO in 1921.**
17. **Why were the Ugandan natives unhappy with the LEGCO before 1945?**
18. **Mention the Ugandan natives who were nominated on the LEGCO in 1945 to represent the following regions of Uganda.**
    - **(i) Central region.**
    - **(ii) Western region.**
    - **(iii) Eastern region**
19. **How did the first Ugandan natives join the LEGCO?**
20. **Give one way the LEGCO helped the people of Uganda to demand for their independence.**
21. **Mention any three methods the Ugandan natives used to demand for their independence.**
22. **What is a Political party?**
23. **Mention any three political parties that were formed in Uganda before independence.**
24. **State the main reason for the formation of political parties in Uganda in 1950s.**
25. **Give one way political parties helped to demand for Uganda's independence.**
26. **Why is Ignatius Kangave Musaazi considered to be a national heroe in Uganda?**
27. **Name the first political party to be formed in Uganda.**
28. **Which political party led Uganda to injdependence?**
29. **Who was the first Chief minister of Uganda?**
30. **How was UPC able to win the 1962 general elections?**
31. **Why did Benedicto Kiwanuka fail to become the first chief minister of Uganda?**
32. **Give one way world war II speeded up the independence process in Uganda.**
33. **Give the meaning of the term Nationalism.**
34. **Name any three famous nationalists during the struggle for independence in Uganda.**
35. **Give any four reasons why the Ugandan natives demanded for their independence.**

36. **State any three problems the natives in Uganda faced during their struggle for independence.**
37. **What title was given to the head of government in Uganda after independence?**
38. **Name the first executive prime minister of Uganda.**
39. **Mention any three instruments that were given to the prime minister on the day Uganda got her independence.**
40. **What role did Maj.Akorimo Kanuti play on the day Uganda got her independence?**

EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 5

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers



For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorised act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

***Author*:** **Kimbugwe Apollo**

Typing: **Kasozi Deo**

Ssevvume Willy

Kamya Imelda

Technical adviser: **Mary Flavia Namulindwa**

Cover design: **Excel Graphics**

Editing: **Excel Publishers Editorial Board**

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Five has been developed basing on the revised Primary Five Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organised, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Five in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the pupils.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts.

TEL: +256 771 623617  and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN UGANDA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TERM ONE

Topic 1: Location of Uganda on the map of East Africa.

Districts and Regions that form Uganda..... ...6
Maps and pictures..... 8
Locating Uganda using the grid reference system..... 12
Uganda's neighbours 16
Uganda as a land locked country..... 17

Topic 2: Physical Features of Uganda.

Introduction to Physical Features 20
Mountains in Uganda..... 20
The Rift Valley..... 26
Plateaus 27
Lakes in Uganda..... 27
Rivers in Uganda 32
The Influence of Physical Features 36

Topic 3: Climate of Uganda.

Weather 40
Climatic Zones of Uganda 42
Factors that Influence the Climate of Uganda 46
The Influence of Climate on Human Activities..... ...49
Farming in Uganda..... 50

Topic 4: Vegetation of Uganda.

Introduction to Vegetation 61
Vegetation Zones of Uganda ..... .62
Vegetation Distribution in Uganda 69
The Influence of Vegetation on Animals ..... .70
Game Parks in Uganda 71
Tourism industry in Uganda 74
Vegetation Conservation 75
Relationship between vegetation and population distribution..... 76

Topic 5: Natural resources of Uganda.

Introduction to natural resources..... 79
Land as a resource..... 79
Water resources 80
Minerals as a resource 82
Animal resources 84
Climate (wind, rainfall, sunshine) as a resource 85
Human resource 86

TERM TWO

Topic 6: The People of Pre-colonial Uganda.

Origin of the People of Uganda 89

Major Ethnic Groups in Uganda..... ..92
Migration of people today 99
Settlement patterns of the people of Uganda.....104
Political, Social and Economic Organisation among The People of Uganda.....105

Topic 7. Foreign Influence in Uganda.

Early Foreign Traders in Uganda 118
European Explorers in Uganda 123
Christian missionaries in Uganda 127
Colonial administrators in Uganda 135

Topic 8. How Uganda became a Nation.

Colonial agreements that were signed in Uganda.....143
Evolution of Uganda's boundaries 145
Colonial administrative systems used in Uganda 146

Topic 9. The Road to independence in Uganda.

Characteristics of colonial rule 149
Colonial resisters in Uganda 150
Formation of the LEGCO in Uganda 151
The struggle for independence in Uganda 152
Formation of political parties in Uganda 153
The influence of world wars on Uganda's independence 154
Uganda gains her independence 156

TERM THREE

Topic 10. Uganda as an independent nation.

Presidents of Uganda since independence.....159
Symbols of an independent nation 162
Democracy in Uganda 166
Elections 167

Topic 11: The Government of Uganda.

Levels of government in Uganda 174
Organs of the government 174
The National constitution 180
Sources of government revenue 182
Budgeting 184
Rights and responsibilities of citizens 187

Topic 12. Population size and Distribution

Introduction to population 194
Population growth 194
Population census 195
Population distribution 196
Population density 199
Effects of HIV/ AIDS on population 201

TOPIC 10: UGANDA AS AN INDEPENDENT NATION.

- **Independence** is the state of being free from social, political and economic oppression.
- **An independent nation** is a country that is free from control of another country.
- Such a country manages its own affairs.
- An independent nation is a country free from colonial rule.
- People elect their own leaders and take part in making important decisions about their country.

Characteristics of a nation.

- It has a national leader.
- It has clearly marked boundaries.
- It has national forces like the army.
- It has its own citizens.
- It has national symbols.
- It has control over all its territorial area.

PRESIDENTS OF UGANDA SINCE INDEPENDENCE.

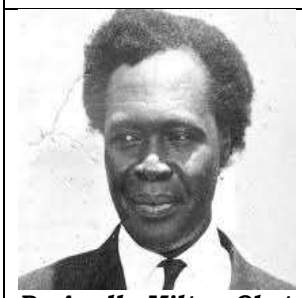
- Sir Edward Muteesa II (9th Oct, 1962 – 2nd March, 1966)
- Dr.Apollo Milton Obote I (2nd March, 1966 – 25th Jan, 1971)
- Idi Amin Dada (25th Jan, 1971 – 11th April, 1979)
- Prof. Yusuf Kironde Lule (11th April, 1979 – 20th June, 1979)
- Godfrey Lukongwa Binaisa (20th June, 1979 – 12th May, 1980)
- Paulo Muwanga (12th May, 1980 – 15th Dec, 1980)
- Dr. Apollo Milton Obote II (17th Dec, 1980-27th July, 1985)
- Gen.Tito Okello Lutwa (27th July, 1985 – 26th Jan, 1986)
- H.E Yoweri Kaguta Museveni (26th Jan, 1986 up to date)



Sir Edward Muteesa II

➢ **From 9th October, 1963-2nd March 1966 (2yrs,144 days)**

- Sir Edward Muteesa II was born on 19 November 1924 and died on 21 November 1969.
- He was the Kabaka of the Kingdom of Buganda in Uganda from 22 November 1939 until his death in 1969.
- He was the thirty-fifth Kabaka of Buganda.
- The foreign press often referred to him as King Freddie, a name rarely used in Uganda.
- He was the first president of Uganda.
- He had no executive powers.(the executive powers were under the prime minister)
- His vice president was Sir Wilberforce Nadiope.
- In 1953, he was exiled to Britain by Sir Andrew Cohen for rejecting the proposed East African federation.
- In 1966, he was exiled to Britain by Apollo M.Obote who attacked his palace. This attack was led by Idi Amin Dada.

	❖ **He died in exile in 1969 and his body was brought back for burial by Idi Amin at Kasubi royal tombs in 1972**
 ***Dr Apollo Milton Obote***	➢ **From 2nd Mar, 1966-25th Jan, 1971 (4yrs,285 days)-Obote I** ➢ **From 17th Dec, 1980-27th July, 1985 (4yrs,222 days)-Obote II** ❖ **He was born in Akokoro village in Apac district in Northern Uganda.** ❖ **Apollo Milton Obote was born on 28 December 1925 and died on 10 October 2005.** ❖ **he was a Ugandan political leader who led Uganda to independence in 1962 from British colonial administration.** ❖ **He was the first Prime Minister of Uganda from 1962 to 1966 and President of Uganda from 1966 to 1971, then again from 1980 to 1985. He was overthrown by Idi Amin in 1971, but regained power in 1980 a year after Amin's 1979 overthrow.** ❖ **He became the first executive president of Uganda.** ❖ **He attacked the Kabaka's palace in 1966 and exiled Kabaka Muteesa II to the Britain. This caused the Kabaka crisis of 1966.** ❖ **He abolished all kingdoms in Uganda.** ❖ **He declared Uganda a republic in 1967.** **Note** ***A Republic*** *is a country that is governed by a president who is elected by the people.* ❖ **He died in exile in Zambia in 2005.**
 ***Idi Amin Dada***	➢ **From 25TH Jan, 1971-11th April, 1979 (8yrs,76 days)** ❖ **He was born in 1925 and died on16 August 2003.** ❖ **He was born to a Kakwa father and a Lugbara mother.** ❖ **He was a Ugandan military officer who served as the President of Uganda from 1971 to 1979** ❖ **He overthrew Obote through a coup.** ❖ **Obote had travelled to Singapore to attend a commonwealth conference.** **Forms of human rights abuse during Amin's regime.** ❖ **He banned all political parties in Uganda.** ❖ **He imprisoned those who opposed him.** ❖ **He killed those who opposed him.eg.Ben Kiwanuka.** ❖ **Other political opponents were kidnapped never to be seen again.** ❖ **He expelled all Asians and the British in 1972 and declared an economic war.** ❖ **He ruled using decrees (unquestionable laws).There was no parliament during his regime.** **Note:** *Amin was overthrown in 1979 when the Ugandans in exile under the Uganda National Liberation Fronf (UNLF) and the Tanzanian People's Defence Forces attacked Uganda.*

 *Prof. Yusuf Kironde Lule*	➢ **From 12th April, 1979-20th Jun, 1979 (68days)** ❖ **He was born on 10 April 1912 and died on 21 January 1985.** ❖ **He was the first president of the UNLF government.** ❖ **The National Consultative Council (NCC) acted as the National assembly.**
 *Godfrey Lukongwa Binaisa*	➢ **From 20th Jun, 1979-12th May, 1980 (327days)** ❖ **He was born on 30 May 1920 and died on 5 August 2010.** ❖ **At his death he was Uganda's only surviving former president.** ❖ **He also ruled for a short time from June 1979- May 1980.** ❖ **He was removed from power and put under house arrest by Paul Muwanga.**
 *Paulo Muwanga*	➢ **From 12th May,1980-15th Dec, 1980 (217days)** ❖ **He was born in 1925 and died on 1 April 1991.** ❖ **Muwanga was the chairman of the Military Commission that had taken over power.** ❖ **He organised the 1980 elections.** ❖ **He appointed Vicent Sekkono as the chairperson of the Electoral Commission.** **<u>Political parties that took part in the 1980 general elections</u>** ▪ **UPC under Dr.Apollo M.Obote.** ▪ **DP under Paul Kawanga Ssemwogerere.** ▪ **Uganda Patriotic Movement(UPM) under Yoweri Museveni.** ▪ **Conservative Party(CP) under Joash Mayanja Nkangi** **Note:**-*The 1980 elections were won by UPC and Obote became the president for the second (2nd) time.*
 *Tito Okello Lutwa*	➢ **From 27th Jul,1985-26th Jan, 1986 (183days)** ❖ **He was born in 1914 and died on 3 June 1996.** ❖ **He took over power from Obote through a military coup on 27th July, 1985.** ❖ **He was overthrown by H.E Yoweri K.Museveni on 26th Jan, 1986.**
 *H.E Yoweri K. Museveni*	➢ **From 26th Jan, 1986 up to date.** ❖ **He was born on 15th September 1944.** ❖ **He started a guerilla war against Obote II's government in 1981.** ❖ **He took over power from Tito Okello on 26th January, 1986 using the National Resistance Army (NRA)** **<u>Reforms under the NRM government.</u>** ▪ **Restoration of kingdoms in 1993.** ▪ **Completion of the 1995 constitution** ▪ **Women enmpowerment.** ▪ **Construction of infrastructure.**

	▪ Promotion of democratic elections. ▪ Introduction of UPE and USE. ▪ Ugandans of Asian origin who had been expelled by Amin Dada were allowed to come back to Uganda.

SYMBOLS OF AN INDEPENDENT NATION.

- National symbols are features/items that help one to identify a particular country.
- Symbols of an independent nation include;
  - National anthem
  - National motto
  - National currency
  - National coat of arms
  - National flag.
  - National emblem
  - National constitution

Symbols of Uganda as a nation.

- The Uganda national flag.
- The Uganda national anthem.
- The Uganda national coat of arms.
- The Uganda national seal.
- The Uganda national constitution.
- The Uganda national emblem.
- The Uganda national currency.

Importance of national symbols.

- ❖ They promote national identity.
- ❖ They show that a country is independent.
- ❖ They promote national unity.
- ❖ They promote the spirit of patriotism.
- ❖ They show the core values of a nation.

THE UGANDA NATIONAL FLAG.



- ❖ The Uganda national flag has three colours ie. black, yellow and red.
- ❖ The flag has a white circle with a crested crane in the middle.
- ❖ The crested crane is standing on one leg meaning to show that Uganda is moving forward in development.
- ❖ The Uganda national flag was designed by Grace Ibingira.
- ❖ The Uganda national flag was first raised on 9th October, 1962, replacing the Union jack.

Meaning of the colours of the Uganda National flag.

(i) Black.
- ➢ Shows that Uganda is a black African country.
- ➢ It represents the dark skinned people of Uganda.

(ii) Yellow.
- ➢ It represents the abundant sunshine received in Uganda.
- ➢ It also represents Uganda's tropical climate.

(iii) Red.
- ➢ It represents the international brotherhood.

(iv) White

- **It stands for the peace enjoyed in Uganda.**

Places where the Uganda national flag can be raised.

- **Schools**
- **Airports**
- **At National radio and TV stations.**
- **Police stations**
- **Embassies and High Commissions.**
- **Hospitals**
- **Government offices**
- **State house**

How to show respect for the Uganda National flag.

- **By standing still when it is being raised or lowered.**
- **It is not wet by either washing or by rainfall.**
- **It is not worn as a clothing.**
- **It does not touch the ground when being lowered.**

Note:

- *The Uganda national flag shows national identity.*
- *The Uganda national flag is flown at half mast to show a national mourning.*

Conditions that can make a government declare a national mourning.

- *Death of a very important person in the government.*
- *When there is a major national calamity.*

THE UGANDA NATIONAL ANTHEM.

1. Oh Uganda! may God uphold thee, We lay our future in thy hand. United, free, For liberty Together we'll always stand. 2. Oh Uganda! the land of freedom. Our love and labour we give, And with neighbours all At our country's call In peace and friendship we'll live. 3. Oh Uganda! the land that feeds us By sun and fertile soil grown. For our own dear land, We'll always stand: The Pearl of Africa's Crown.	➢ **"Oh Uganda,land of beauty" is the country's official song. It was composed by George Wilberforce Kakoma.** ➢ **George W.Kakoma was assisted by Peter G.Wingard.** ➢ **It was first officially sung on independence day on 9th October 1962 by Makerere college school choir, conducted by a student Catherine Mwandha.** ➢ **The Uganda national anthem is sung and played during official functions.It symbolises the country's principles, hopes and goals.** ➢ **The Uganda national anthem has three stanzas . All the three stanzas are sung to open and close official and important functions.** ***NOTE:*** ✓ *If there are other anthems or prayers during a function, the national anthem is sung first, followed by other anthems and then a prayer. At the end of the function, other anthems are sung first and the national anthem is sung last to close the function.*	

Occasions where Uganda national anthem is sung

- **On school assemblies**
- **During parliamentary sessions.**
- **Opening of sports activities.**
- **Opening of school debates.**
- **At official ceremonies**
- **Start of public functions.**

Importance of the Uganda national anthem.

- **It promotes national unity.**
- **It promotes nationalism and patriotism.**
- **It is a national prayer for Uganda.**
- **It promotes the fear of God amongst Ugandans.**

Respect for the Uganda national anthem.

- **When singing the national anthem, people must stand up at attention to show respect to the nation.**
- **When one is unable to stand up, he/she should raise up the right hand.**

THE UGANDA COAT OF ARMS.



- *Uganda coat of arms is composed of a shield and two spears on a green hill with the Uganda kob on the left and the crested crane on the right. It is designed using symbols that summarise important ideas and things Uganda holds .*
- *It is found on official documents, the national currency, parliament, the government seal and the president's official car.*
- *It is also hung in government institutions like courts and offices to symbolise power and authority.*
- *The Uganda coat of arms was designed by* ***Paul Mukasa.***
- *The Uganda coat of arms acts as a public seal of Uganda.*
- *The public seal is used to signify the official nature of government documents that bear its stamp.*

Features found on the Uganda coat of arms.

- **The Uganda Kob.**
- **The crested crane.**
- **The sun.**
- **The drum.**
- **The shield and spear.**
- **Blue stripes on top of the shield.**
- **Blue stripes entering the shield at the bottom.**
- **The black colour of the shield.**
- **Coffee and cotton.**
- **The Green land scape.**
- **The National Motto.**

Meaning of features found on the Uganda coat of arms.

- **The spears and shield represents the traditional means of defence.**
- **The blue stripes at the top represents the water bodies in Uganda.**
- **The blue stripes at the bottom entering the shield represent the source of River Nile found in Uganda.**
- **The sun represents the abundant sunshine received in Uganda or warm climate experienced in Uganda.**
- **The drum represents the traditional means of communication. It also represents the culture of the people of Uganda.**
- **The black colour on the shield symbolises the African race of Ugandans.**
- **The kob represents the rich/abundant wildlife in Uganda.**

- **The crested crane** represents the gentleness and peaceful nature of the people of Uganda.
- **Coffee and cotton** on the green hill show the traditional cash crops grown in Uganda.
  It also shows that Uganda is an agricultural country.
- **The green landscape** represents the abundant vegetation of Uganda.
- **The green hill** represents the many physical features of Uganda.
- The national motto "**For God and My Country**"signifies that the people of Uganda are God fearing.

Use of the Uganda national coat of arms.

- It is printed on letter heads and official documents.
- It is used on the national currency.
- It is also hung up in the government places an instrument of power and authority.eg in the parliament, courts of law etc.
- It is also put on the president's car.

Note;-***Uganda was named the "Pearl of Africa" by the British prime minister Winston Churchill because;***

- *Uganda had rich natural resources.*
- *Uganda had beautiful sceneries.*

THE UGANDA NATIONAL EMBLEM.



- **The crested crane** is the Uganda's national emblem.
- It signifies the gentleness and peaceful nature of the people of Uganda.
- Its drawn when it is in motion to show that uganda is moving forward in terms of development

Why the crested crane was chosen to be Uganda's national emblem.

-It is a beautiful bird. -It is a gentle bird.
-It is a graceful bird. -It is a peaceful bird.

How Ugandans show respect for the crestad crane.

- It is not kept as a domestic bird.
- People are not allowed to kill it.

THE UGANDA NATIONAL CURRENCY.

- The Uganda national currency is called the **Uganda shilling.**
- Uganda's currency exists in two forms. ie.in notes and coins.
- 50 shillings is the smallest currency value of Uganda's currency while 50,000 shillings is the biggest.
- The Uganda national currency promotes trade among people in the country.

THE UGANDA NATIONAL MOTTO

- The Uganda national motto "**For God and My Country**"signifies that the people of Uganda are God fearing.
- The Uganda National anthem was first used by Mwiri college in Busoga.
- It was adopted as the Uganda national motto by Dr.Apollo M.Obote.
- The Uganda national motto promotes the spirit of nationalism, patriotism and national unity.

THE NATIONAL LANGUAGE.

- A national language is a language which is officially adopted to be used by all the people in a country.
- Uganda has no national language because she has many tribes which speak different languages.
- Uganda uses English as her official language.
- Luganda is the most widely spoken local language in Uganda.



The Independence monument *was designed by* ***Gregory Maloba***

Importance of the national language.

- ❖ It makes communication easy among people.
- ❖ It promotes national unity.
- ❖ It brings a sense of belonging.
- ❖ It promotes trade among the natives.

DEMOCRACY IN UGANDA.

- The word democracy comes from a Greek word "Demos" which means people.
- According to the Greeks, Democracy is a system of government that is of the people, by the people and for the people.

Meaning:

- ➢ Of the people: The government comprises of regular citizens.
- ➢ By the people: The government is elected by its citizens
- ➢ For the people: The government is mainly formed to benefit the people.

- Democracy is the system of government in which power is exercised by all people in the country.
- Democracy is the will of the majority over the minority.
- A democratic government is a system of government in which power is exercised by all citizens.
- Democracy started from the city of Athens in Greece.

Principles of Democracy

- Human rights observance.
- Regular free and fair elections.
- Rule of law
- Political stability
- Government transparency
- Democratic participation of all citizens.

Indicators of democracy in Uganda.

- ❖ Elected leaders.
- ❖ Respect for human rights eg.freedom of movement.
- ❖ Constitutional rule
- ❖ Equality of all citizens
- ❖ Accessibility to all positions of leadership by all citizens

Advantages/ importance of democracy

- ❖ It promotes national unity.
- ❖ It promotes peaceful change of leadership.
- ❖ It promotes equality of all citizens.
- ❖ It promotes the spirit of patriotism and nationalism.
- ❖ It promotes respect for human rights.
- ❖ It controls bad leadership.

Disadvantages of democracy

- Decision making takes a long time.
- It is very expensive to exercise.
- It neglects the interests of the minority.

Challenges faced when exercising democracy.

- High levels of poverty among people.
- Corruption.
- High crime rate.
- Political greed.
- Tribalism, ethnicity and nepotism.

Roles of citizens in promoting democracy.

- By respecting the rights of other people.
- By standing as a candidate for political offices.
- By taking part in voting during elections.
- Accepting the results of the elections.
- By watching carefully how their leaders use their powers.

ELECTIONS.

- **An election** is a formal democratic process of choosing leaders by voting for them.

Types of elections.

- General elections.
- Primary elections.
- By-elections
- Referendum elections.
- Local elections.

i) **General election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose leaders at the national level

eg. The president, members of parliament.

ii) **Referendum election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose to accept or reject a political proposal that concerns all citizens in the country.

iii) **Local election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose leaders at local council level

ie. Local council I -V leaders.

iv) **By-election.**

- This is a formal democratic process of choosing a leader to fill a vacant political post.

v) **Primary election.**

- This is a formal democratic process in which a political party chooses a candidate to contest for a specific office in the general elections.

Causes of by-elections.

- Death of the incumbent/ post holder.
- Resignation of the incumbent.
- Long term imprisonment of the incumbent.
- Cancellation of the election results by the court of law.
- Mental illness of the incumbent.

- **When vote of no confidence has been made against the incumbent.**

Note: *By-elections lead to loss of government funds when organising them.*

Conditions for one to become an eligible voter in Uganda.

- **One should be a registered voter.**
- **One should be 18 years of age and above.**
- **One should be a citizen of Uganda.**

Qualification for presidency in Uganda.

- **One should be a citizen of Uganda.**
- **One should be a registered voter.**
- **One should not be less than 35 years of age.**
- **One should have a minimum qualification of Advanced level certificate.**

Qualification for a member of parliament in Uganda.

- **One should be a registered voter.**
- **One should be a citizen of Uganda.**
- **One should be eighteen years of age and bove.**
- **One should have a minimum qualification of Advanced level certificate or its equivalent.**

Key activities in the electoral process

- **Voter registration.**
- **Voter education (civic education concerning elections)**
- **Party primary campaigns.**
- **Training of the electoral officials.**
- **Vote casting by registered voters.**
- **Vote counting.**

ORGANISATION OF NATIONAL ELECTIONS.

- **The Independent Electoral commission is the body responsible for organizing and conducting regular free and fair elections in the country.**
- **It is under the Ministry of Justice and Constitutional affairs.**
- **Justice Simon Byabakama is the current chairperson of the Uganda electoral commission.**
- **The chairperson Electoral commission is appointed by the president and approved by the parliament.**
- **General elections in Uganda are conducted after every five years.**

Roles of the Electoral commission

- **To register voters and candidates.**
- **To prepare election materials**
- **To train the electoral officials**
- **To count votes and release election results.**
- **To carry out civic education concerning elections/ to carry out voter education.**
- **To demarcate polling stations and constituencies.**

Challenges faced by the Electoral commission in Uganda.

- **Shortage of funds.**
- **Poor response from the voters.**

- ❖ Dishonest electoral officials.
- ❖ Delay of election materials
- ❖ Election malpractices.
- ❖ Voter bribery due to increased poverty among the electorate.

Possible solutions to the challenges facing the Electoral commission.

- ❖ By carrying out effective voter education. This can help to reduce the number of invalid votes.
- ❖ By eradicating poverty among the electorate.
- ❖ By distributing election materials in time.
- ❖ By punishing dishonest electoral officials.
- ❖ By providing adequate funds to the electoral commission.

Importance of elections

- ❖ They promote democracy in the country
- ❖ They promote peaceful change/ transition of leadership.
- ❖ They enable people get rid of bad leaders
- ❖ They enable people to choose their own leaders.
- ❖ They promote respect for human rights.

ELECTION MALPRACTICES.

- These are illegal acts done during elections.
- The election malpractices are the various forms of vote rigging.
- Some of these practices may lead to cancellation of election results and hence leading to by-elections.

These practices include;

- Voter bribery.
- Multiple voting.
- Torturing of opponents.
- Campaigning on the Election Day.

Bad practices that happen during voting.

- Bribing voters during elections.
- Harassing voters of a particular candidate.
- Ballot stuffing (putting pre-ticked ballot papers in the ballot box before elections)
- Grabbing and stealing ballot papers.
- Campaigning on the voting day.
- Cheating when counting votes.

Bad practices that happen after elections.

- Making fun of the losers of an election.
- Mis-recording of election results.
- A candidate refusing to accept defeat.
- Attacking a voter who has not voted a particular candidate.
- Unnecessary delay to announce final results.

THE ELECTORAL SYSTEMS.

- Secret ballot system
- Open election system

(i) Secret ballot system

- This is a system where a voter is given a ballot paper and secretly selects a person he/she wants.
- This is a modern way of voting in the whole world.

Advantages of secret ballot system

- It promotes friendship among people.
- Elections can easily be monitored by computers.
- A voter is free from interference.

Disadvantages of secret ballot system

- It is very expensive to conduct.
- Votes can easily be rigged.
- It is difficult to the illiterates and the blind.
- Election results take long to be declared.

(ii) Open elections

- These are elections held when everyone is seeing each step.
- It is done by lining up behind the candidate or by putting up the hands.
- This is the cheapest way of voting in many places.
- This was common in the past.

Advantages of open elections

- They are very cheap to conduct.
- Results can not easily be rigged.
- It is simple for the illiterates.
- It discourages bribery during elections.
- Releasing of election results takes a short time.

Disadvantages of open elections

- It promotes hatred among people.
- It limits people's freedoms.
- Some people are easily influenced by others during voting.

Materials used during the process of elections.

- Nomination forms. These are forms filled by the candidates and submitted to the Electoral Commission in order to be nominated for the posts they want.
- Ballot paper. This is a sheet bearing names and photograph of a candidate standing to be elected on particular post.
- A ballot box. This is a box where ballot papers are kept after voting.
- Voter's register.This is a list of all the people who register to participate in voting.
- Ink. It is used to mark a voter who has finished to vote.
- Basins.They are used to provide a safe place to for voters to cast his/her vote.
- Biometric machine.This is a machine which proves the details of a voter.
- Declaration forms.These are forms where election results are recorded.

Terms used in elections

- **A Polling station is a place where voting takes place.**
- **A Polling day is the day when voting takes place.**
- **A Polling officer is a person who is in charge of elections at a polling station. He issues out ballot papers, declares results and fills the declaration form.**
- **A Polling assistant is a person who assists a polling officer at a polling station. they check for voters' names, issue out ballot papers, mark voters who have finished voting.**
- **A Polling constable is a person who is in charge of security at the polling station**
- **An Electorate refers to people in a country who qualify to vote.**
- **Proxy is a person who is given authority to vote on behalf of someone who is absent.**
- **Election monitors is a group of people from a foreign country who come to watch over elections.**
- **Voting by proxy is when a person who is absent gives authority to another person to vote on his/her behalf.**
- **The candidates' agent is a person who represents a candidate at a polling station.**
- **An eligible voter is a person who qualifies to vote. He/she must appear on the voters' register of that polling station.**
- **Returning officer is a person in charge of elections in the district or division.**
- **An electoral college is a group of electors who are selected to elect a candidate to a particular office.**
- **A candidate is a person who stands to be voted/contests in an election.**
- **A valid vote is a vote that has been ticked correctly.**
- **An invalid vote is a vote that has been ticked wrongly. It is counted on none of the candidates.**
- **A constituency is an electoral area represented by a member of parliament.**

Note: ***The Citizen's Coalition for Electoral Democracy in Uganda (CCEDU)*** *is the body responsible for monitoring the general elections in Uganda.*





1. **Give the meaning of each of the following;**
   - **(i) Independence.**
   - **(ii) A Republic**
2. **Mention any three characteristics of an independent nation.**
3. **Who led Uganda to independence?**
4. **Name the first executive president of Uganda.**
5. **Mention any two ways human rights were violated during Idi Amin's regime.**
6. **Name the former president who made Uganda become a republic.**
7. **Why is Ignatius Kangave Musaazi considered to be a national heroe in Uganda?**
8. **What title was given to the head of government in Uganda between 1962-1966?**
9. **Name the president of who restored kingdoms in Uganda.**
10. **Mention any four symbols of Uganda as a nation.**
11. **Give any two ways national symbols are important to a country.**
12. **Name the flag which was replaced by the Uganda national flag.**

13. What do the following colours symbolise on the Uganda national flag?
    (i) Black
    (ii) Red
14. How do Ugandans show respect to the nation when the Uganda national flag is being raised?
15. Why is the Uganda flag some times flown at ahalf mast?
16. Mention any three places where theUganda national flag is usually flown.
17. State any one condition that can lead to a national mourning.
18. Why do Ugandans who participate in Commonwealth games carry the Uganda national flag?
19. Match the information in list A with that given in list B correctly.

List A	*List B*
(i) Grace Ibingira	Designed the Uganda coat of arms.
(ii) George W.Kakoma	Designed the Uganda independence monument.
(iii) Maj.Akorimo Kanuti	Composed the Uganda national anthem.
(iv) Paul Mukasa	Designed the Uganda national flag.
(v) Gregory Maloba	Raised the Uganda national flag on 9th October, 1962

20. Give one way a national anthem is important to Uganda as a nation.
21. Why do Ugandans stand at attention when the Uganda national anthem is being sung/ played?
22. What do the following features symbolise on the Uganda national coat of arms?
    (i) The drum
    (ii) The sun
    (iii) Coffee and cotton
    (iv) The Blue stripes at the bottom of the shield.
23. Why did Winston Churchill name Uganda "The Pearl of Africa"?
24. Give any two reasons why the crested crane was chosen to be Uganda's national emblem.
25. Why does Uganda have no national language?
26. What name is given to the Uganda national currency?
27. Give any two ways a national language is important to a country?
28. Why does Uganda use English as her official language?
29. Write the Uganda national motto.
30. Give the meaning of the term Democracy.
31. Mention any three indicators of democracy in Uganda.
32. Give any two ways democracy is important to a country.
33. Mention any three ways democracy is exercised in Uganda.
34. State any two challenges faced when exercising democracy.
35. Give any two ways citizens can participate in promoting democracy in the country.
36. Mention any four types of elections.
37. Mention any three causes of by-elections in a country.
38. State any one way by elections affect the economic development of a country.
39. Mention any one condition one must fulfill in order to be allowed to participate in national leaders in Uganda.
40. Mention any two conditions presidential candidates must have fulfilled in order to contest as candidates.
41. Name the body is responsible for organizing national elections in Uganda.
42. State any three roles of the above body in Uganda.
43. Give any two reasons why it is always important to organise regular free and fair elections in the country.
44. State any three challenges the Uganda Electoral commission faces when carrying out its duties.

45. **Mention any three examples of election malpractices.**
46. **State any two advantages of getting leaders through the secret ballot system.**
47. **State any two advantages of using open elections when choosing leaders.**
48. **What title is given to the political head of a constituency?**
49. **Mention any two election materials at a polling station on the polling day.**
50. **Mention any two electoral officers found at a polling station on the polling day.**

TOPIC 11: **THE GOVERNMENT OF UGANDA**

INTRODUCTION TO THE GOVERNMENT.

- A government is a ruling body of a state.
- This is a group of people who exercise authority in a state.
- Governance is the system by which a society is governed.

Levels of government in Uganda.

- The Central government.
- The Local government (LC1-LCV).
- The Central government is in charge of the whole country while the Local government is in charge of a district, region or an urban area.
- The Central government builds and maintains major roads (through UNRA) while Local government builds and maintains feeder roads.

Difference between the central government and local government.

Central government	*Local government*
▪ Cares the development of the whole nation.	▪ Cares for the development for the local areas.
▪ Central government is one	▪ Local governments are many.
▪ Controls all armed forces.	▪ Controls the local defence forces.
▪ Build and maintains major roads	▪ Builds and maintains feeder roads.
▪ Runs the major hospitals	▪ Controls health centres.

Levels of local government.

Area	*Level*	*Political leader*
Village	Local council one	Chairperson LC I
Parish	Local council two	Chairperson LC II
Sub-county	Local council three	Chairperson LC III
District	Local council five	Chairperson LC V

Systems of government.

- Party system of government.
- Democratic system of government.
- Unitary government system.
- Monarchial government system
- Theocratic system of government.
- Dictatorship system of government
- Federal system of government
- Military system of government.

ORGANS/ARMS OF THE DEMOCRATIC GOVERNMENT.

- Executive.
- Judiciary.
- Legislature.

		
H.E.Yoweri Museveni	*Hon.Rebecca Kadaga*	*Hon. Justice Bart Katureebe*

THE EXECUTIVE.

- **It is the main administrative organ of the government.**
- **Its main duty is to plan and rule the country.**
- **This organ is made up of the president, ministers and civil servants.**
- **It is headed by the president.**

Duties of the Executive

- **To plan for and rule the country.**
- **To implement government policies/programmes.**
- **To maintain law and order in the country.**
- **To run and rule the country.**
- **To collect and spend government revenue.**

(i) The President.

- **The president is the political head of a country.**
- **He is the commander-in-chief of the armed forces in Uganda. eg.the Army, the police, the prisons**
- **He appoints top officials of the government eg. Ministers, Prime minister, Vice president, ambassadors, chief justice, RDCs etc. These appointed officials are approved by the parliament**
- **He chairs cabinent meetings.**
- **He represents the country internationally.**
- **He is the head of state and head of government.**
- **He grants mercy to offenders who deserve pardon.**
- **He approves the parliamentary bills.**

Note.

- ✓ *The president is sworn in by the* ***Chief justice****.*
- ✓ *The president receives the instruments of power when swearing in. these instruments of power include; The National Constitution, dummy key to the state house, Uganda mnational coat of arms, standard presidential flag.*

(ii) The Ministers.

- **The minister is the title given to the head of a ministry.**
- **The president and all the ministers are referred to as the cabinent.**
- **Ministers make sure that their ministries implement government policies.**

- **Cabinet ministers are assisted by ministers of state.**
- **The chief minister is known as the <u>Prime minister</u>. He is in charge of the government business.**
- **<u>A Permanent secretary</u> is the highest civil servant in a ministry.**

			
H.E.Yoweri K, Museveni	*H.E.Edward Ssekandi*	*Rt.Hon.Ruhakana Rugunda*	*Hon.Janet Museveni*

The Cabinet of the Government of Uganda as per 2020.

President/Commander-in-Chief of the Uganda Armed forces	***H.E. President Museveni Yoweri Kaguta***
Vice President of Uganda	***H.E.Ssekandi Edward Kiwanuka***
CABINET MINISTERS	
Prime Minister and Leader of Government Business	***Rt Hon. Ruhakana Rugunda***
First Deputy Prime Minister and Deputy Leader of Government Business in Parliament	***Gen. (Rtd) Ali Moses***
Second Deputy Prime Minister and Minister without Portfolio	***Hon. Kirunda Kivejinja Ali***
Minister of Education and Sports	***Hon. Museveni Janet Kataaha***
Minister of Public Service	***Hon. Muruli Mukasa Wilson***
Minister of Trade, Industry and Cooperatives	***Hon. Kyambadde Amelia Anne***
Minister of Internal Affairs	***Gen. Odongo Jeje Abubakhar***
Minister of Agriculture, Animal Industry and Fisheries	***Hon. Ssempijja Vincent Bamulangaki***
Minister of Finance, Planning and Economic Development	***Hon. Kasaija Matia***
Minister of Foreign Affairs	***Hon. Kutesa Sam Kahamba***
Minister of Health	***Dr Aceng Jane Ruth***
Minister of Works and Transport	***Gen. Katumba Wamala Edward***
Minister of Lands, Housing and Urban Development	***Hon. Kamya Beti***
Minister of Water and Environment	***Hon. Cheptoris Sam***
Minister of Justice and Constitutional Affairs	***Prof. Kamuntu Ephraim***
Attorney General	***Hon. Byaruhanga William***
Minister of Defence and Veteran Affairs	***Hon. Mwesige Adolf***
Minister of Local Government	***Hon. Magyezi Raphael***
Minister for Karamoja Affairs	***Eng. Byabagambi John***
Minister of Energy and Mineral Development	***Dr Kitutu Mary***
Minister of Information, Communication Technology and National Guidance	***Hon. Nabakooba Judith Nalule***
Minister for Science, Technology and Innovation	***Dr Tumwesigye Elioda***
Minister, Office of the Prime Minister (General Duties)	***Hon. Karooro Okurut Mary***
Minister, Office of the Prime Minister (Relief, Disaster Preparedness and Refugees)	***Eng. Onek Hillary Obaloker***
Minister of Tourism, Wildlife and Antiquities	***Col. (Rtd) Butime Tom***
Minister, Office of the President (Presidency)	***Hon. Mbayo Esther Mbulakubuza***
Minister, Office of the President (Security)	***Gen. Tumwine Elly***
Minister for East African Community Affairs	***Maj. Gen. (Rtd) Kahinda Otafiire***

Minister for Kampala Capital City	***Hon. Amongi Betty***
Minister of Gender, Labour and Social Development	***Hon. Tumwebaze Frank***
Government Chief Whip	***Hon. Nankabirwa Ruth Sentamu***

(iii) The Civil servants.

- **Civil servants are people who work for the government eg.doctors, teachers, police, nurses, engineers, army etc.**
- **Civil servants implement government programs.**
- **The head of all civil servants in every ministry is the Permanent secretary.**
- **The head of all civil servants in the district is the Chief Administrative Officer (CAO)**
- **All civil servants are under the Ministry of the public service.**
- **The Public Service Commission (PSC) is responsible for recruiting government workers.**

THE LEGISLATURE.

- **It is sometimes called the National Assembly or Parliament.**
- **Its main work is to make and amend laws.**
- **The legislature is made up of the members of the parliament (MPs).**
- **It is headed by the Speaker of parliament.**
- **It was called the Legislative Council (LEGCO) during colonial times.**
- **The legislature makes laws which are used by the Judiciary to punish law breakers.**
- **Hon.Rebecca Kadaga is the current speaker of the parliament of Uganda.**

Duties of the legislature.

- **To make and amend laws.**
- **To approve the National Budget.**
- **To check on how the government spends its income.**
- **To approve the government officials who have been appointed by the president.**



Composition of the Legislature.

- **Members directly elected to represent constituencies.**
- **District women representatives.**
- **Representatives of special interest groups.eg.the workers, the army, people with disabilities, the youths, the women.**
- **Ex-officios. These are ministers without constituencies.They sit in parliament but haveno right to vote.**

Note:*A constituency* *is an electoral area represented by a member of parliament.*

How one can become a member of parliament in Uganda.

- **By winning parliamentary elections.**
- **Being elected to represent a special interest group.**

Officers in the parliament.

Officer	*Role(s)*
▪ The speaker.	❖ He/ she chairs debates in the parliament. ❖ He/she presides over meetings in the parliament.
▪ Deputy speaker	❖ He/ she chairs debates when the speaker is not around.
▪ Clerk to parliament.	❖ He/she records and keeps the proceedings/ minutes of debates in the parliament. The recorded proceedings are called Hansards.
▪ Sergeant at arms.	❖ He keeps security in the parliament. He is a senior police officer. ❖ He also alerts the house when the speaker is about to enter. ❖ He carries the mace as the speaker/president enters the house. A mace is a symbol of authority representing the power of the speaker.

Note:

- ✓ ***A bill*** *is a proposed law in the parliament.*
- ✓ *A bill becomes* ***a law/an act*** *when the president has signed it.*
- ✓ *A law is a rule that governs the conduct of citizens of a country. It is called an act.*
- ✓ ***An act*** *is a law that has been passed by the parliament and signed by the president.*

JUDICIARY.

- It is headed by the chief justice.
- Hon.Bart Katurebe Magunda is the current Chief justice of Uganda.
- The chief justice is appointed by the president and is approved by the parliament.
- The main work of the judiciary is to punish law breakers.
- It's the Judiciary which decides whether one has broken the law or not.
- The Judiciary is made up of the justices, judges, magistrates, attorneys and lawyers.
- The Judiciary uses the laws made by the parliament when punishing law breakers.
- Law breakers are punished by;
  - ✓ Fining them
  - ✓ Sentencing them to spend a period of time in prisons.

Composition of the Judiciary.

- The Chief justice
- Lawyers
- Magistrates
- Judges
- Principal judge

Duties of the judiciary.

- ❖ To punish law breakers.
- ❖ To interpret laws to people.
- ❖ To settle disputes among people in the country.
- ❖ To protect the rights of the citizens.

Roles of the Chief justice.

- **He/ she is responsible for the swearing in of the top political leaders in the country.**
- **He is the head of the supreme court.**
- **He/ she guides the judges and magistrates on how to perform their work.**
- **He disciplines the judges and magistrates who are out of order.**

Types of courts

(i) Local council courts. They deal with simple civil cases.

Note:

Criminal cases *are cases where offenders break the law of the state.eg. defilement, rape, robbery, murder, etc.they are between individuals and the government while* ***Civil cases*** *are cases between individuals accusing one another eg.divorce, child abuse, child neglect etc.*

(ii) Magistrates courts.

- **This is headed by the Chief magistrate.**

(iii)The High court.

- **It hears appeals from the court below it.**
- **It is headed by the Principal judge**

(iv)The court of appeal.

- **This hears the appeals from the decisions of the High court.**
- **It is headed by the deputy Chief justice.**

(v) The supreme court.

- **This is the final court of appeal.**
- **It is the highest court in Uganda.**
- **It is headed by the chief justice.**

Duties of the government.

- **To provide social services to its citizens.**
- **To maintain law and order in the country.**
- **To promote national development.**
- **To defend the country against attacks.**
- **To pay salaries for civil servants.**
- **To make the national budget.**
- **To conduct national elections.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Social services*** *are the activities that improve the people's way of living.*
- ✓ *They are provided by private individuals, the government and non-government organisations.*

Social services the government provides to its people.

- *Education service.*
- *Transport service*
- *Water service*
- *Banking service*
- *Security service*
- *Communication service.*

Examples of social service centres.

- *Schools*
- *Hospitals*
- *Radio stations*
- *Taxi parks.*
- *Police stations*
- *Banks*
- *Police stations*

Problems faced by the government when providing social services.

- Shortage of funds.
- Corruption.
- Bad weather
- Insecurity in some areas.
- Outbreak of epidemic diseases eg.Covid-19, cholera, ebola etc.
- High population growth.
- High levels of illiteracy.
- Poor transport and communication network.

Solutions to the problems the government faces when providing social services.

By maintaining good security in the country.

By enforcing laws against corruption.

By encouraging the use of family planning methods to control high population growth.

By sensitising people about the importance of social services.

Note:

- ✓ *The office of the **Inspector General of Government (IGG)** was set up to control corruption in Uganda.*
- ✓ *The **Ministry of Ethics and Integrity** was established to curb corruption in Uganda.*

THE NATIONAL CONSTITUTION.

- A National constitution is a set of laws by which a country is governed.
- It is a supreme law of a country.
- By-laws are laws that are made by the local government.

Uganda's constitutions since independence.

(i) The 1962 independence constitution.

- It led Uganda to independence in 1962.

(ii) The 1966 copnstitution.

- It was known as the pigeon hole constitution.
- It was written after the conflict between Sir Edward Muteesa II and Dr.Apollo M.Obote.
- It was not popular because it was not discussed by the parliament.

(iii)The 1967 constitution.

- It was also called the Republican constitution.

Results of the 1967 constitution.

- All kingdoms in Uganda were abolished.
- Uganda became a republic.
- The president was given more powers to rule the country than the prime minister.

(iv) The 1995 constitution.

- Mr.Stephen Akabway was the chairperson of the interim Electoral commission that organised the election of the Constituent Assembly Delegates.
- The constituent Assembly Delegates (a group of people with the power to change the constitution) were elected in 1994.
- The constituent assembly chaired by James Wapakhabulo and Victoria Mwaka was his vice.

- **Justice Benjamin Odoki was the head of the constitutional commission that collected views from the majority of the citizens all over the country.**

Note:

- ✓ *It was called the **people's constitution** because it was made basing on people's views.*
- ✓ *This was announced publically/**promulgated**/launched on 8th October,1995 at the constitutional square (formerly City square) in Kampala.*

Importance of the national constitution.

- **It protects the rights of the citizens.**
- **It promotes democracy.**
- **It promotes peaceful change of leadership.**
- **It defines the roles of each organ of the government.**
- **It is used to settle cases peacefully.**
- **It guides the government when making national policies.**
- **It promotes good governance.**

Relationships between the constitution and elections.

- **The constitution defines the duration for conducting elections.**
- **It sets conditions for aspiring candidates.**
- **It sets conditions to participate in elections.**
- **It states the functions of the electoral commission.**

COMMUNICATION.

- **Commulnication is the sending and receiving of messages.**

Traditional ways of communication.

- **Use of drums**
- **Ululation**
- **Clapping hands**
- **Use of horns**
- **Use of smoke signals**
- **Whistling**
- **Sending special messengers**

Modern ways of communication.

- **Radio**
- **Television**
- **Billboards**
- **Telephones**
- **Magazines**
- **Newspapers**
- **Letters**

Note.

- ✓ ***Mass media** is the sending of messages to many people at the same time.*
- ✓ *Means of mass media communication include; radios, televisions, newspapers*
- ✓ *All media services are regulated by the **Uganda Communications Commission** (UCC).*

Barriers to effective communication in Uganda.

- **High taxes imposed on the communication companies.**
- **Illiteracy among the people.**
- **Arrests and torture of journalists.**
- **Poverty among people.**
- **Communication barrier.**
- **Poor network coverage.**
- **Poor transport network.**
- **High cost of communication means.**

Possible solutions to the barriers of communication.

- By introducing a national language.
- By providing free education for all Ugandans.
- By lowering the cost of communication means.
- By charging low taxes on communication companies.
- By constructing and maintaining good transport network.
- By regulating the work of communication companies.

Importance of communication.

- It promotes trade.
- It promotes national unity.
- It promotes peace in the country.

SOURCES OF GOVERNMENT REVENUE.

- Government revenue means government's income.
- Government's income is all the money earned by the government in a given time.
- The main source of revenue of the government of Uganda is taxation.

Sources of government revenue.

- Taxation.
- Grants.
- Loans.
- Donations.
- Sale of electricity
- Tourism.
- Court fines and traffic fines.
- Licences.
- Sale of minerals.
- Agricultural exports.
- Sale of parastatal bodies.

Note:

- ✓ ***Grant*** *is a sum of money given to the government to solve particular problems and to be paid back without interest.*
- ✓ ***Loan*** *is the money a country borrows from another country or international financial body and is paid back with interest.*
- ✓ ***Donation*** *is the foreign aid given to a country according to its needs eg.materials, finances, equipment. Donations are not paid back.*
- ✓ ***Fine*** *is themonhey charged from people who have been found guilty for breaking the law.*
- ✓ ***Licence*** *is an official document which gives permission for one or an organisation to carry out business.*

TAXATION.

- Taxation is the system of imposing taxes on people.
- Taxes is all money paid to government by the people and their business or organisations in order to provide public services.
- It is the charge against a person, property or activity for the support of government.

Types of taxes paid in Uganda.

- Direct tax
- Indirect tax.

(a) Direct tax

- This is the tax collected directly from the person who pays it.

Examples of direct taxes.

(i) Property tax.

- This is the tax paid by the people on the commercial buildings they own.

(ii) Income tax.

- This is the type of tax paid by people according to how much they earn. The salary earners (workers) pay this tax every month using a method of Pay As You Earn (PAYE).

Groups of people exempted from paying direct taxes.

- Prisoners
- House maids
- Elderly people
- Students

(b) Indirect tax.

- This is the tax paid by the final consumers of the commodities.
- It is passed on by thye traders to the consumers (final users) in form of price increase.

Examples of indirect taxes.

(i) Customs duty tax.

- This is tax paid on imports/ goods entering a country.
- It is also called import tax.

(ii) Excise duty tax.

- This is tax paid on locally manufactured goods/ goods made within the country.

(iii) Value Added Tax (VAT).

- This is tax paid by all people who buy goods and services.eg. When paying for water, electricity, telephones, cars, shoes etc.
- VAT is charged on imports, manufactured goods, goods supplied for sale and on services.
- It is charged as value added to a commodity.

Why people should pay taxes.

- To provide money to support government programmes.
- To provide money to pay civil servants.
- Government raises money to provide social services.

Why some people do not pay taxes.

- They lack knowledge about tax education.
- Taxes are too high.
- Some revenue collectors are corrupt.

THE UGANDA REVENUE AUTHORITY (URA)

- This is the body responsible for collecting taxes in Uganda.
- It assesses tax payers and also educates the public about the importance of paying taxes.



URA Tower located at Nakawa

Roles of the URA.

- To collect taxes.
- To assess the tax payers.
- It conduct tax education.
- It controls smuggling.

Problems faced by the URA.

- Smuggling of goods.
- Tax evasion/tax defaulting.
- Corrupt revenue officers.
- Declaration of false goods.

Possible solutions to the problems facing URA.

- By educating the public on the importance of paying taxes.
- By paying attractive salaries to revenue officers.
- By employing honest revenue officers.
- By punishing corrupt revenue officers.
- By imposing fair taxes on tax payers.

SMUGGLING.

- Smuggling is the illegal importation and exportation of goods.
- Special Revenue Protection Services (SRPS) has been set up to control/ curb smuggling in Uganda.
- SPRS replaced the Anti-smuggling Unit.

Dangers of smuggling.

- It reduces tax income.
- It may lead to importation of low quality goods into the country.
- It lowers market for locally manufactured goods.
- Expired goods can be imported into the country.

Ways of controlling smuggling.

- By enforcing laws against smuggling.
- Reducing on taxes paid on goods.
- By employing honest revenue officers.
- By supporting the work of the Special Revenue Protection Services (SRPS).

BUDGETING.

- A Budget is an estimate of income and expesonditure for a given time.
- A National budget is a country's estimate of expected income and expenditure for a financial year.
- A financial year is a planning year for the government.

- In Uganda, a financial year begins on 1st July and ends on 30th June the following year.
- The Ministry of Finance, Planning and Economic development is responsible for preparing a National budget in Uganda.

Parts of a budget.

- Income. This is the amount of money earned..
- Expenditure. This is the amount of money spent.

Importance of making a National budget.

- It helps the government to identify the sources of income.
- It helps the government to cater for priorities.
- It helps the government to avoid unplanned expenditure.
- It promotes proper planning.
- It promotes accountability.

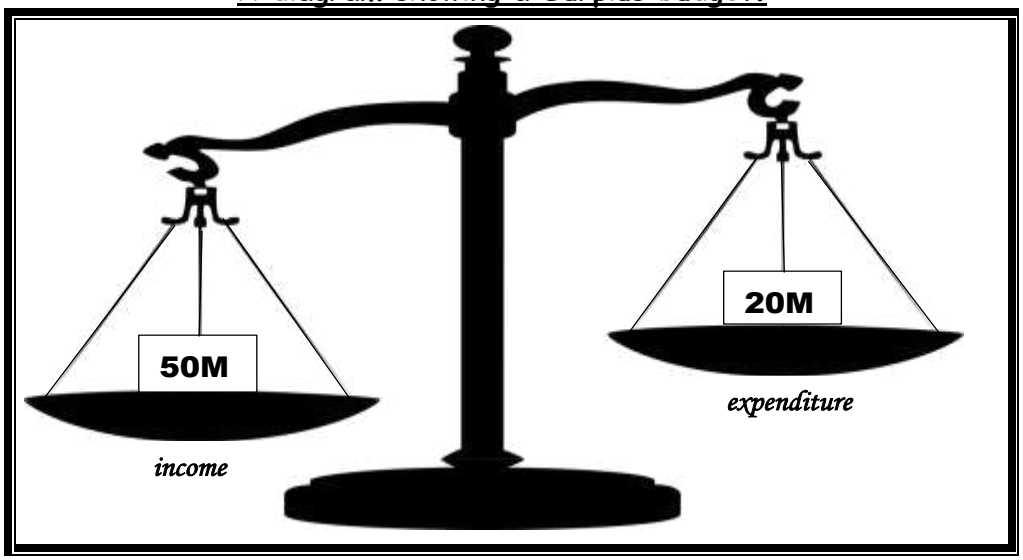
Types of budgets.

- Surplus budget
- Balanced budget
- Deficit budget.

(i) Surplus budget.

- Surplus budget is a type of budget where by the income is greater than the expenditure.
- The amount of money earned is more the amount spent.

A diagram showing a Surplus budget.



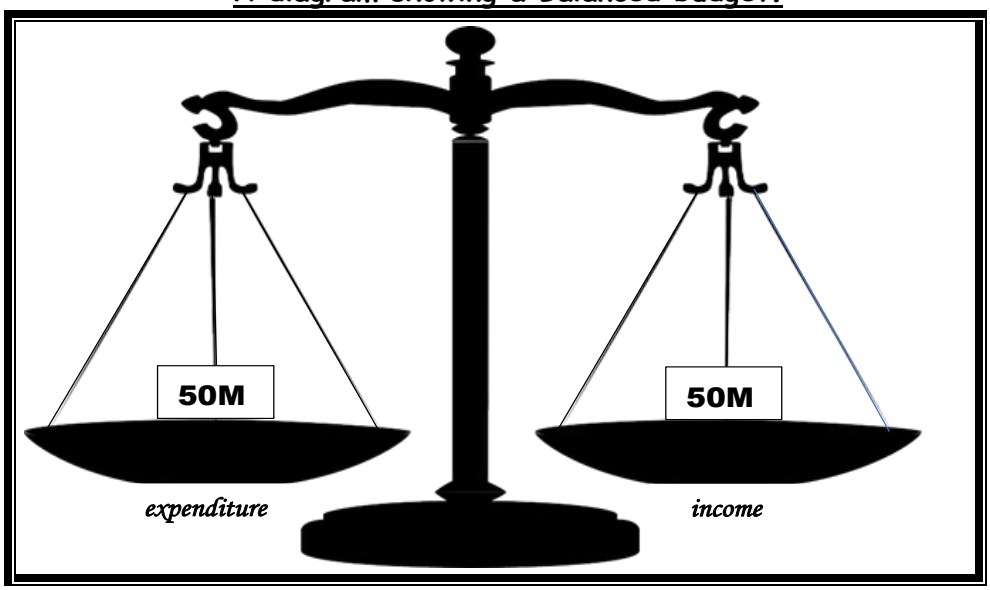
Importance of a surplus budget.

- It promotes development.
- It encourages saving and investment.
- It limits debts.
- It improves people's living standards.

(ii) Balanced budget.

- A balanced budget is a type of budget where by the income equal to the expenditure.
- It has neither a surplus nor debts.

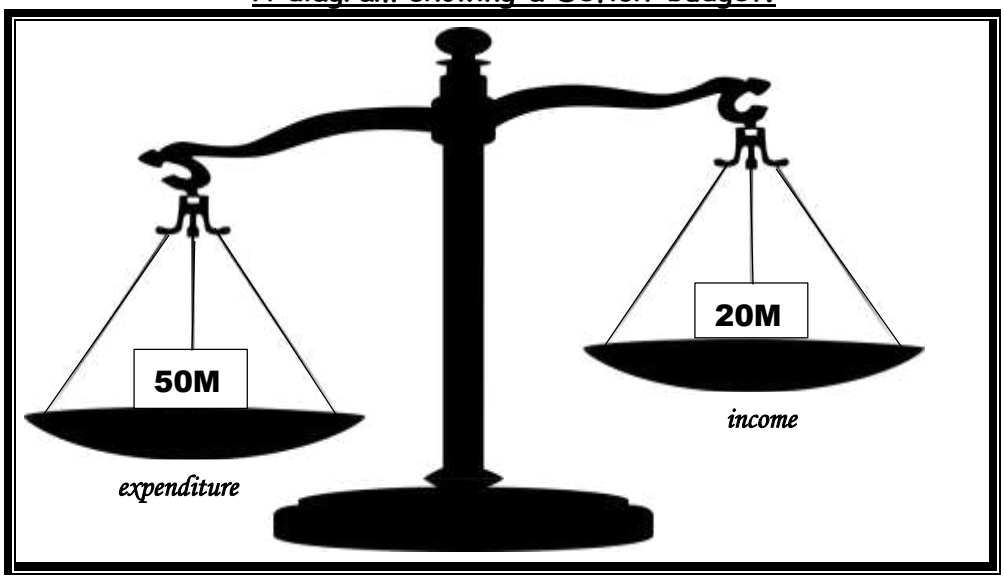
A diagram showing a Balanced budget.



(iii) **Deficit budget.**

- A deficit budget is a type of budget where by the expenditure is more income.
- The amount of money earned is less than the amount of money spent.
- Under developed countries like Uganda usually make this type of budget.

A diagram showing a Deficit budget.



Causes of a Deficit budget.

- Corruption.
- Failure to exploit natural resources.
- Smuggling of goods.
- Lack of reliable sources of income/ limited investment.
- Fall in prices of goods.
- Constant civil wars.

Dangers of the deficit budget.

- It leads to debts.
- It limits saving and investment.
- It leads to over dependence.

- It limits development.
- It limits services the government provides to people.

Solutions to the deficit budget.

- By widening the tax base.
- By diversifying the economy of the country.
- By privatisation.
- By mechanising agriculture.
- By getting loans from international institutions.
- By encouraging foreign investors in the country.

GOVERNMENT EXPENDITURE.

- This refers to the ways how the government spends its income.

How the government spends its revenue.

- By building schools.
- By providing education services.
- By paying salaries for civil servants.
- By paying back loans and grants.
- By buying weapons.
- By funding developmental programmes like Operation Wealth Creation, NAADS.
- By constructing roads in the country.
- By helping people hit by disasters eg. refugees.
- By providing health services.

RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF CITIZENS

CITIZENSHIP:

- **Citizenship** is the legal right of belonging to a particular country.
- ***A citizen*** is a person who has the legal right of belonging to a particular country.

How one acquires citizenship of Uganda.

- Through birth (is the legal right of belonging to a country when one's parents are citizens in that particular country)
  -it is acquired by people born by parents who are Ugandans.
- Through descent (is the legal right of belonging to a country a person gets when his / her ancestors were citizens in that country)
- Through registration. (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to a foreigner who has applied for citizenship in a particular country)
  -In Uganda, this registration is done under the Ministry of Internal affairs.
  eg.if a woman who is not a Ugandan gets officially married to a Ugandan, she can apply to become a citizen and she is registered.
- Through naturalisation (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to a person after having spent a very long time in a particular country)
- Through adoption. (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to foreigner who was brought up by a person who is a citizen in a particular country)
  -It is granted to children below 18 years of age whose parents are not known and have been adopted by citizens of Uganda.

Factors that determine one's citizenship.

- **Area of birth**
- **Marriage to a citizen**
- **Citizenship of parents**
- **Nationality law**

Types of citizenship

- **Single citizenship. This is the legal right of belonging to one particular country.**
- **Dual citizenship. This is the legal right of belonging to more than one country.**

Loss of citizenship of Uganda.

- **By spying against your country. (Espionage against Uganda).**
- **By joining the army of an enemy country to fight Uganda.**
- **If one's citizenship was acquired unlawfully/ by fraud.**
- **By denouncing the citizenship.**

Responsibilities/duties/obligations of a citizen

- **To pay taxes promptly**
- **To defend the country**
- **To help in maintaining law and order**
- **To participate in community work**
- **To respect the rights and freedoms of other people**
- **To obey national laws**
- **To be loyal to the rulers or head of state**
- **To register the birth of his or her children**

Note:

- ***A Passport*** *is an official document issued to citizens allowing them to travel abroad and enter the home country.*
- *A passport can be obtained by both young and old people.*
- ***A National ID card*** *is a legal document given to all Ugandan citizens for easy identification.*
- *A National ID shows national identity and also enables citizens to get access to the social services provided in the country.*

HUMAN BASIC NEEDS

- **Basic needs are things which man cannot live without.**

Examples of human basic needs

- **Food**
- **Clothes**
- **Shelter**
- **Medical care**
- **Security**

Problems faced when getting human needs

- **Poverty**
- **Unemployment**
- **Laziness**
- **Sickness**
- **Poor supply of social services**
- **Corruption**
- **Bad weather changes**
- **Increasing population**

CHILDREN'S RIGHTS

- **Children rights are basic natural freedoms to which all children are entitled.**
- **A child is a person below 18 years of age according to Uganda's constitution.**

Examples of children's rights

- **A right to medical care**
- **A right to play.**
- **A right to protection.**
- **A right to have a name**
- **A right to food**
- **A right to education**

Importance of children's rights

- **They protect children from harm.**
- **They promote respect for children.**
- **They promote the welfare of children in the society**

Note: ***The Vice chairperson*** *is the local council I committee member who is in charge of protection of children's rights.*

CHILD ABUSE

Child abuse is the violation of children's rights

Forms of child abuse

- **Physical child abuse.**
- **Emotional child abuse.**
- **Psychological child abuse.**

Examples of child abuse practices.

- **Defilement**
- **Child labour**
- **Denial of food.**
- **Child sacrifice**
- **Child neglect**
- **Forced early marriage**
- **Child battering**
- **Kidnapping**

Causes of child abuse

- **Poverty**
- **Alcoholism**
- **Wars**
- **Parental neglect**
- **Death of parents**
- **Divorce or separation of parents**
- **Indiscipline of children**

How children can lead to the abuse of their rights.

- **By walking alone at night.**
- **By accepting gifts from strangers.**
- **By stealing property at home.**
- **By failing to perform their duties.**
- **By staying in lonely places.**

Groups of people who commonly abuse children's rights.

- **Insane people.**
- **Drug addicted people.**
- **Parents of children.**
- **Step parents**
- **Fellow children**
- **Community members**

Effects of child abuse

- **It leads to death of children.**
- **It causes body deformity.**
- **It causes injuries to the body.**
- **It leads to early pregnancies.**
- **It can lead to disease infections**

Ways of controlling children abuse

- **By sensitising children about their rights.**
- **By encouraging children to move in groups.**
- **By reporting cases of child abuse to elders.**
- **By educating the public on children's rights**
- **By encouraging children to behave well.**

❖ By enforcing laws against child abuse.

HUMAN RIGHTS

- Human rights are basic natural freedoms to which all people are entitled.
- These are natural freedoms that people must enjoy.

Examples of fundamental human rights

- The right to life
- Freedom from discrimination.
- Freedom from slavery.
- Freedom from unfair detainment.
- The right to trial.
- Freedom from torture.
- We are all equal before the law.
- Freedom to move.
- The right to seek a safe place to live in.
- Every grown up has the right to do a job.
- Every grown up has the right to marry.
- Right to a nationality.
- The right to own property.
- Freedom of thought.
- Freedom of expression.
- The right to democracy.
- Right to social security.
- The right to education.
- The right to food and shelter.
- The right to play.

Human rights violation

- This is the denial of the basic human freedoms people are entitled to.

Forms of human rights abuse

- Torturing of political opponents.
- Raping of women.
- Killing of political opponents.
- Slavery.
- Mob justice.
- Denial of the freedom of movement.
- Imprisonment without trial
- Death penalty.

How the government can protect people against the human rights violation.

❖ By teaching people about their rights.
❖ By enforcing laws against human rights abuse.
❖ By promoting peace and security in the country.
❖ By forming organisations that ensure the protection of human rights.

Note: ***The Uganda Human Rights Commission (UHRC)*** *was set up in Uganda to ensure protection of human rights*

Roles that can be played by the citizens in preventing the human rights violation.

❖ By respecting other people's rights.
❖ By reporting the cases of human rights abuse.
❖ By helping the police in arresting people who violate human rights.
❖ By sensitising other people about their rights.

Duties of the Uganda Human Rights Commission.

❖ To educate the citizens about their rights.
❖ To investigate the violation of human rights.
❖ To promote human rights.
❖ To receive complaints from people who feel that their rights have been violated.

CHILD LABOUR

- Child labour is when children are employed to do work.
- Children are paid money/wages/salaries after performing such heavy tasks.

Forms of child labour.

- Carrying heavy goods for other people.
- Employing children as house maids.
- Working in building sites.
- Doing a lot of domestic work.
- Employing children in mines.
- Offering children for prostitution.
- Tasking them to sell goods as hawkers.
- Employing them in stone quarries.

Causes of child labour.

- Poverty
- Child neglect by the parents.
- Desire for money by the parents
- Death of parents.
- Need for cheap labour provided by the children.
- Limited number of family members.

Dangers of child labour.

- It can lead to early marriages.
- It leads to high risks of diseases.
- It can leasd to death of children.
- It leads to school dropouts.
- It can lead to body injuries.
- It can lead to stunted growth among children.

Ways of controlling child labour.

- By enforcing strict laws against child labour.
- By educating people about the dangers of child labour.
- By promoting developmental programmes to eliminate poverty.
- By sensitising people to use family planning practices in order to produce children they are able to care for.
- By providing free formal education to keep children in schools.
- By encouraging people to care for their children.





1. What is a Government?
2. State any two difference between the Central government and Local government.
3. Name the body that is responsible for building major roads in Uganda.
4. What title is given to a political head of a sub-county?
5. Give one way a government is important to a country.
6. Mention the three arms of a democratioc government.
7. State any three duties performed by the executive organ of the government.
8. Complete the table below correctly.

Government organ	*Headed by*	*Composition*
(i) ----------	----------	-civil servants -ministers
(ii) ----------	Chief justice	---------- ----------
(iii) ----------	----------	-Constituency MPs -Ex-officios

9. State any two roles performed by the president of Uganda.
10. Mention any three instruments of power given to the president on the swearing in ceremony.

11. What title is given to the;
    (i) Political head of a ministry?
    (ii) Highest civil servant in a ministry?
    (iii) Highest civil servant in a district?
12. How does the chief justice help the president to attain leadership powers?
13. Mention any two examples of civil servants.
14. State tany three ways the legislature in a democratic government.
15. How is the work of the parliament similar to that of the defunct LEGCO?
16. Give one way one can become a member of parliament in Uganda.
17. How does the Legislature help the Judiciary to perform its work?
18. Mention any three special groups of people represented in the par5liament of Uganda.
19. How is a Bill different from an Act?
20. State one role performed by the following people in the parliament of Uganda.
    (i) Speaker of parliament.
    (ii) Clerk
    (iii) Sergeant at arms
21. When does a bill become a law?
22. Give any two ways law brakers are punished by the Judiciary.
23. Apart from punishing law breakers, give any two other ways the Judiciary is important to a country.
24. State any three roles performed by the government.
25. State any three problems the government faces when performing iots duties.
26. Name the government ministry that is responsible for fighting againsty corruption in the country.
27. What are Social services?
28. Mention any three social services provided by the government to its citizens.
29. Give the meaning of each of the following;
    (i) A constitution
    (ii) By-laws
30. Which constitution made Uganda become a republic?
31. How did the 1967 constitution affect cultural institutions in Uganda?
32. Why is 8th October, 1995 remembered in the history of Uganda?
33. State any two ways a national constitution is important to acountry.
34. Give the meaning of Mass media.
35. Name the body that is responsible for regulatinmg media services in Uganda.
36. State any two challenges hindering effective communication in Uganda.
37. How does communication promote trade in an area?
38. Mention any four sources of government revenue.
39. Give any two ways the government spends its revenue.
40. Name the type of tax charged on;
    (i) Locally manufactured goods.
    (ii) Imported goods.
41. Mention the two types of taxes.
42. Name the body that is responsible for collecting taxes in Uganda.
43. State any three problems the above body faces when carrying out its work.
44. Give the meaning of the term Smuggling.
45. Name the body under URA that is responsible for controlling smuggling in Uganda.
46. Give two any two ways smuggling affects the development of the country.
47. Give the meaning of the following;

(i) A Budget
(ii) A National budget
(iii) A Deficit budget.

48. Mention the two parts of a budget.
49. Name the government ministry responsible for making a national budget.
50. Mention the three types of budgets.
51. Give any two ways budgeting is important to an individual.
52. State any two ways a surplus budget is important to a family.
53. Mention any two causes of a deficit budget in a country.
54. State any two ways a deficit budget is dangerous to a family.
55. Give any two ways a country like Uganda can overcome a deficit budget.
56. Give the meaning of the term Citizenship.
57. Mention any two ways one can acquire citizenship of Uganda.
58. State any three obligations of a good citizen.
59. Give any one condition that can make one lose citizenship of Uganda.
60. What name is given to an official government document that permits one to travel to other countries?
61. Give any two ways a National identity card is useful to the citizens of Uganda.
62. Why is food regarded to as a basic need?
63. State any three problems people face when getting their basic needs.
64. Mention any two forms of child abuse.
65. State any two causes for the increasing cases of child abuse in Uganda today.
66. Give any two ways children can contribute towards violation of their rights.
67. How is the LC I Vice-chairperson useful to children in your community?
68. Give any two ways cases of child abuse can be reduced in the society today.
69. Give the meaning of Human rights.
70. Mention any three examples of fundamental human rights.
71. Name the body that is responsible for protecting therights of the people of Uganda.
72. State one role a citizen can play to protect other people's rights.
73. Give any two ways children are subjected to child labour in the society today.
74. Mention two ways child labour affects children in your community.
75. Give any one way child abuse practices can be reduced in our community today.

TOPIC 12: POPULATION SIZE AND DISTRIBUTION.

- **Population** is the total number of people living in an area at a given time.
- Uganda has a population of over 45 million people according to the 2020 national population census statistics.
- **Population distribution** is the way people are spread in an area.
- **Population growth** is the increase in the number of people in an area.
- **Population explosion** is the sudden increase in the number of people in an area.
- **Population census** is the official counting of people in a country.
- **Population density** is the number of people living in an area per square kilometre.
- **Population structure** is the composition of people in terms of age and sex.

POPULATION GROWTH.

- **Population growth** is an increase in the number of people in an area of a country.

Factors that encourage Population growth.

- High fertility rate among women.
- Improved medical services.
- Early marriages.
- Polygamous marriage.
- Availability of food.
- Improved security and peace.
- Unplanned family size.
- Immigration.
- Producing children for prestige.
- Refugee influx.

Cultural factors that promote population growth.

- Polygamy
- Producing children for prestige.
- Forced early marriages.

Advantages of population growth in an area.

- It creates a large market for goods produced in an area.
- It provides cheap labour force in an area.
- The government collects more taxes from the people in areas with a large population.
- It leads to development of an area.

Disadvantages(dangers) of population growth.

- It leads to shortage of land for settlement leading to land fragmentation.
- It leads to development of slums.
- It leads to easy spread of communicable diseases due to congestion.
- It leads to high crime rate especially in urban centres.
- It leads to inadequate social services in an area.
- It leads to over exploitation of natural resources leading to environmental degradation.
- It increases government expenditure and slows down other developments.
- It leads to unemployment.

Ways of controlling population growth.

- **By encouraging people to use family planning methods.**
- **By promoting girl child education.**
- **By discouraging polygamy.**
- **By enforcing strict laws on immigration.**
- **By rewarding families with a small population.**
- **By discouraging early marriages.**

Natural disasters that may reduce the number of people in an area.

- **famine due to drought**
- **lightning**
- **volcanic eruption**
- **epidemic diseases**
- **landslides/mudslides**
- **storms**
- **earthquakes**

Artificial hazards that may reduce the number of people in an area.

- **Road accidents**
- **fire outbreaks**
- **wars**
- **water and food poisoning**
- **plane crush.**

Note:

- ✓ ***Population explosion*** *is the sudden / rapid increase in the number of people in an area.*
- ✓ *The major cause of population explosion is the coming of refugees.*
- ✓ *Refugee influx can bring about a sudden increase in the number of people in an area.*
- ✓ ***A refugee*** *is a person who has been forced to leave his/ her country because of a disaster.*

  Causes of refugees *.*

  -Civil wars -landslides -famine -volcanic eruption -floods

POPULATION CENSUS

- **Population census is the official counting of people in a country.**
- **Population census is the process of collecting, analysing and using information about people in the country.**
- **Enumerators are trained people who collect information about people in the country during population census.**
- **The census exercise is organized by the Ministry of Finance, Planning and Economic development.**
- **The body in Uganda that is responsible for conducting the census exercise is the Uganda Bureau of Statistics (UBOS).**
- ***A census night*** **is the night before the census exercise is carried out.**
- **Population census in Uganda is carried out after every ten years.**

Reasons why the population census in Uganda is carried out after every ten years.

- **It is very expensive to carry out every year.**
- **To allow population changes to take place.**

Importance of carrying out a population census in a country.

- To effectively plan for the people.
- To determine the birth and death rates.
- To determine the population structure (composition of the population in terms of age and sex).
- To know the level of people's living standards.
- To know the total number of people in a country.
- To know the level of literacy in a country.

Types of information collected during a population census.

- Age of the family members.
- Number of children produced by the couple.
- Type of housing in a home stead.
- Sex of the family members.
- Religious status of the family members.
- Occupation of the people in a family.
- Major source of energy used at home
- Level of education of the family members.

Problems faced by enumerators during a population census.

- Harsh weather conditions
- Ignorance amongst the people
- Moving long distances
- Poor transport network in some areas.
- Insecurity in some areas.

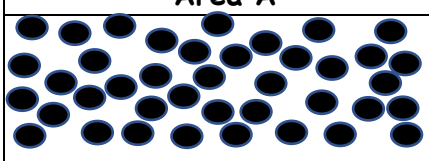
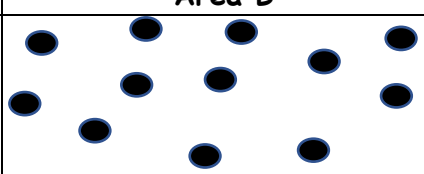
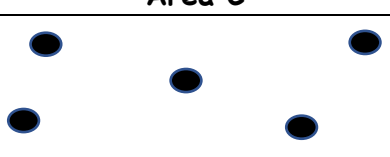
Problems faced by the government during a population census.

- Shortage of funds.
- Insecurity in a country.
- Poor transport and network.
- Wrong information given by some people.
- Shortage of skilled enumerators.

POPULATION DISTRIBUTION.

- Population distribution is the way people are spread in an area.
- The distribution of the population in Uganda varies from one area to another.
- Some areas of Uganda have very many people (are densely populated),some have a moderate number of people (optimum population) while others have very few people (sparsely populated)
- Dense population is the situation when an area has many people compared to the size of the land.
- Sparse population is the situation when an area has very few people compared to the size of the land.
- Optimum population is when the number of people living in an area can be well supported by the available resources.

Population distribution in our district.

Area A	Area B	Area C
		
Dense population	Optimum population	Sparse population

Types of population distribution.

- **Dense population.**
- **Sparse population.**

SPARSE POPULATION

- **Sparse population is when an area has very few people compared to the size of the land.**

Areas that are sparsely populated.

- **Semi-arid areas**
- **areas affected by civil wars**
- **steep slopes**
- **forested areas.**
- **rural areas**
- **areas affected by natural disasters.**

Why the above areas are sparsely populated.

a) Semi-arid areas.

- **The areas experience long dry seasons.**
- **The areas receive very little.**
- **They have infertile soils.**
- **They experience very high temperatures during day time.**

b) swampy areas

- **They are greatly affected by floods during the rainy season.**
- **They have dangerous aquatic animals that attack people.**

c) Forested areas

- **They have many disease vectors.**
- **They harbour many dangerous animals which are dangerous to people.**
- **The government doesn't allow human settlement in such areas.**

d) Steep slopes.

- **They have poor transport network.**
- **They hinder mechanisation of agriculture.**

e) Areas affected by civil wars.

- **People run away from such areas in order to save their lives.**

f) Rural areas.

- **They have poor social services.**
- **They have limited market for goods.**
- **They have few job opportunities.**

Factors that lead to low/ sparse population in an area.

- **Unreliable rainfall/drought.**
- **Outbreak of epidemic diseases in an area.**
- **Poor social service delivery.**
- **Presence of natural disasters like floods, landslides**
- **Poor/infertile soils**
- **Outbreak of famine.**
- **Political instability/insecurity.**

DENSE POPULATION.

- **This is when an area has many people compared to the size of the land.**

Areas that are densely populated.

- **Around the shores of lakes**
- **Around river banks**
- **Urban areas (cities, towns and trading centres)**
- **Plateau areas**
- **Areas with favourable climate**
- **Areas with fertile grounds for crop growing.**

Examples of densely populated areas.

- **Lake shores**
  - **They have fertile soils for crop growing.**
  - **They receive reliable rainfall which supports crop growing.**
  - **Presence of lakes promotes fishing.**
- **River banks**
  - **They have fertile soils for crop growing.**
  - **They receive reliable rainfall which supports crop growing.**
  - **Presence of rivers promotes fishing.**
- **Urban areas**
  - **They have many job opportunities**
  - **They have better social services.**
  - **They have a large market for goods.**
- **Plateau areas**
  - **They have fertile soils for crop growing.**
  - **They receive reliable rainfall which supports crop growing.**
  - **Plateau areas have lakes and rivers which promote fishing.**
- **Mountain slopes**
  - **They have fertile soils for crop growing.**
  - **They receive reliable rainfall which supports crop growing.**
  - **They have plenty of minerals which promote mining.**
- **Areas along the major roads.**
  - **Such areas usually have a large market for goods.**
  - **There is easy access to social service centres.**
  - **They have many trade opportunities.**

Factors that lead to a dense/ high population.

- **Reliable rainfall.**
- **Availability of employment opportunities.**
- **Urbanisation.**
- **Industrialisation.**
- **Improved peace and security.**
- **Presence of natural resources.**

Factors that influence population distribution.

- **Rainfall distribution.**
- **Employment opportunities.**
- **Relief of an area.**
- **Social service provision.**
- **Government policy.**
- **Nature of the soil.**
- **Political stability.**

How the above factors influence the population distribution of an area.

Rainfall distribution/ climate.

- **The areas that receive reliable rainfall are densely populated because they support farming. Areas that receive very little are sparsely populated because they can't support crop growing.**

Nature of the soil.

- **Areas that have fertile soils are densely populated because they support plant growth. Areas with infertile soils are sparsely populated because they can not support plant growth.**

Vegetation distribution.

- **Areas that have thick vegetation are not occupied by people because they harbour dangerous animals, vectors and pests.**
- **The areas with good vegetation cover like savannah grasslands are favourable for human settlement.**

Relief.

- **Steep slopes of mountains have few people due to land slides, soil erosion and poor transport.**
- **Plateau areas and gently sloping lands are densely populated due to fertile soils,good drainage and better transport networks.**
- **Valley areas and plains have a low population due to floods and high temperatures.**

Social service provision.

- **Areas with good social service provision are densely populated while those with poor social service provision are sparsely populated.**

Government policy.

- **The government stops people from settling in certain areas like game parks, game reserves, swamps making them sparsely populated.**

Political stability.

- **Areas that are politically stable are densely populated.**
- **People take refuge in more peaceful areas compared to those that experience wars.**

Urbanisation.

- **Developed areas like towns attract many people because they have good jobs and employment opportunities while rural areas are sparsely populated due to poor social services leading to rural-urban migration.**

POPULATION DENSITY.

- **This is the number of people living in an area per square kilometre.**

How to determine population density.

Population density = total population(people).
Total area (km^2)

Example:An area has a population of 600,000 people, living in an area of 300km^2,calculate the population density of that area.

Population density = total population.
Total area (km^2)
=600,000 people
300km^2
=200 people/km^2

Therefore, the population density of that area is 200people/km^2

Types of population density.

a) HIGH POPULATION DENSITY.

- **This is a large number of people living in an area compared to the available resources.**

Areas with a High population density.

- Shores of lakes. eg.lake Victoria
- Mountain slopes eg.mountain Mufumbiro
- Major towns and cities Kampala,Masaka,Jinja,Mbarara,Arua

Advantages of High population density in an area.

- ❖ It creates a large market for goods.
- ❖ It leads to a large labour force in an area.
- ❖ It leads to high revenue collection in form of taxes.
- ❖ It promotes development in an area.
- ❖ It promotes proper utilisation of resources in an area.



Storeyed houses can help to solve shortage of land in towns

Problems associated/ caused with a High population density.

- Unemployment.
- Shortage of food.
- Easy spread of communicable diseases.
- Development of slums.
- Poor hygienic condition leading to disease outbreak.
- Environmental degredation.
- High crime rate.

Solutions to problems associated with a High population density.

- ❖ People in urban areas should build storeyed buildings to solve a problem of land shortage.
- ❖ Government should provide better social services in rural areas to promote urban-rural migration.
- ❖ Empowering the youths to start small scale businesses (projects).
- ❖ By extending electricity to rural areas.
- ❖ Educating people to use modern methods of farming to increase food production.

b) LOW POPULATION DENSITY.

- This is when an area has a small number of people compared to the available resources.

Advantages of a low population density.

- People have enough land.
- Low crime rate.
- There is enough accommodation.
- It promotes conservation of the natural environment in an area.
- Communicable diseases can not easily spread from one homestead to another.

Disadvantages of a low population density.

- There is low market for local goods or imported goods.
- There is low labour force.
- There is low tax base for the government.

- There is poor social service provision.
- There is limited social security.
- There is under utilisation of resources in an area.

Solutions to a low population census.

- By improving social services to attract more people.
- By setting up industries in an area.
- By encouraging mechanisation to increase food production.
- By encouraging people to marry many wives.

EFFECTS OF HIV/AIDS ON POPULATION.

- HIV stands for Human Immunodeficiency Virus.
- AIDS stands for Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome.
- AIDS patients are people who suffer from AIDS.
- AIDS patients in Uganda are cared for by The AIDS Support Organisation (TASO).

How TASO helps AIDS patients.

- It provides them with counselling services.
- It provides them with Anti-Retroviral drugs (ARVs)
- It provides relief aid in terms of food.

How AIDS is spread.

- By sharing sharp objects with an infected person.
- Contact of wounds with blood of an infected person.
- Having unprotected sexual intercourse with an infected person.
- Using unsterilised sharp objects during some cultural practices like circumcision.
- Through blood transfusion with an infected person.

Use of ABC to prevent AIDS.

- A=Abstain from sex (to unmarried people)
- B=Be faithful to your partner (to married couples)
- C=Condom use.

Social effects of HIV/AIDS on the population.

- It leads to death of people.
- It causes misery to the infected person.
- It leads to isolation.
- It leads to many orphans due to deth of the parents.

Economic effects of HIV/AIDS on population.

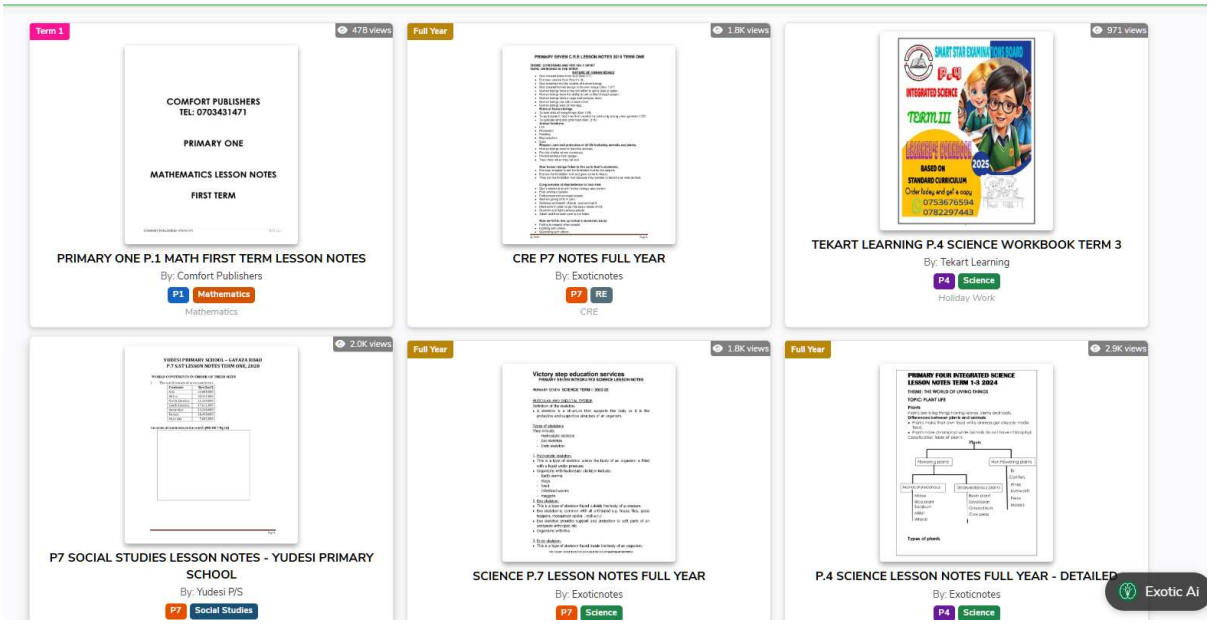
- It leads to loss of efficiency at work.
- It leads low labour supply due to death of many people.
- It leads to poverty in a family as a result of overspending on drugs treating those infected.
- It leads to low market for goods due to death of many people.



Testing Exercise.

1. Give the meaning of each of the following;
   (i) Population
   (ii) Population growth
2. Give any three causes of high population growth in Uganda.
3. State any two advantages of a high population in an area.
4. Mention any two problems an area is likely to face as a result of having a large population.
5. Give any two economic benefits of a large population to the development of a country.
6. Mention any three natural disasters that may lead to the reduction in the number of people in an area.
7. Name the body that is responsible for conducting a national census in Uganda.
8. Mention any three types of information that is collected by enumerators during the census.
9. Which ministry is responsible for conducting a national census in Uganda?
10. Give any one reason why a national census in Uganda is conducted after ten years.
11. State any three reasons why the government conducts a national census.
12. Mention any three problems faced by the enumerators during the census exercise.
13. Why is population census in Uganda conducted after ten years?
14. State any three problems the government faces when conducting a national population census.
15. Give the meaning of Population distribution.
16. Mention any three factors that influence population distribution.
17. Give one reason why steep slopes of mountains are sparsely populated.
18. Mention any three factors that lead to a sparse population in an area.
19. State any one two reasons why slopes of most mountains in East Africa are densely populated.
20. Why are there many people living around the shores of lake Victoria?
21. Mention any three examples of sparsely populated areas in East Africa.
22. Why is the North Eastern part of Uganda sparsely populated?
23. Give the meaning of Population density.
24. Which East African country has the biggest population density?
25. Calculate the population density of town W which has a population of 4500 people living in an area of $90km^2$.
26. Give one way the government can encourage the settlement of people in rural areas.
27. What is Population structure?
28. Give any two ways TASO helps AIDS victims in Uganda.
29. How can married people safeguard themselves against AIDS?
30. State any two ways HIV/ AIDS affects economic development in an area.

This document was downloaded from https://exoticnotes.com



Do you need more LESSON NOTES for Primary (All classes)?

Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/

If you need LESSON NOTES for SCIENCE (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/science/

If you need LESSON NOTES for English (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/english/

If you need LESSON NOTES for Mathematics (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/mathematics/